41
365
TO

THE RIGHT REVEREND

ROBERT JAMES

LORD BISHOP OF WORCESTER

THIS BOOK IS BY PERMISSION INSCRIBED

IN TOKEN OF

RESPECT AND GRATITUDE

FOR HIS LORDSHIP'S KIND INTEREST

IN THE WELFARE

OF

BROMSGROVE SCHOOL
PREFACE

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The Bromsgrove Latin Grammar attempts to explain the language by a reference to the real principles of its form and structure; and by presenting the facts which must be learned, in a natural arrangement instead of the artificial methods which are usually employed. The plan is a new one, having never been systematically adopted in any other Grammar, though its principles were recognised by scholars.

The experiment of exhibiting this system in an elementary work was made in the first edition under circumstances so unfavourable, that I can only attribute the success which it has obtained to the excellence of the general plan, which in some degree counterbalanced its otherwise numerous defects. The present edition, however, appears under more promising auspices, and is offered with somewhat more of confidence to the public. The general arrangement of the Grammar continues the same as before;
but the whole has been revised, and many improvements made in the details and development of the system. In this I have gladly availed myself of many valuable suggestions, kindly offered me by several scholars who have themselves had experience in tuition; and I shall gladly receive any future hints and corrections from the same or similar sources.

It has long been a question whether the Rules of Grammar are better presented to boys in English, or in Latin:—both methods have their advantages;—Latin is better for ready repetition, and English for being understood. To those who prefer the latter advantage, the present Grammar is offered; having been composed expressly for school use; though it is hoped that some portions of its contents may be profitably read by more advanced students.

As in the former edition, two different-sized types have been employed; the larger print being intended for beginners, and to be learned by heart; while the smaller may afterwards be read, and questions asked upon it. Words which are not really used in the language, but are noticed in Grammars for the sake of their derivations, have been distinguished by being placed within brackets; as, (faux), fauce, a jaw. The crude-forms of words have been printed in small capitals, and are also placed in brackets, except when
rendered sufficiently conspicuous from standing in a column by themselves; as, leo, a lion, (leon). The declensions and conjugations being differently arranged from what is the case in other Grammars, have not been called 1st Declension, 2nd Declension, &c., when referred to in the course of the book; but they have been named, after their characteristic letter, the A—Declension, E—Declension, &c., which will prevent confusion and perplexity to those who have been accustomed to a different numerical arrangement.

I need only add that no pains have been spared in correcting the press, and that it is hoped no typographical errors of any importance will be discovered.

G. A. J.

_Bromsgrove,_
_January 1st, 1841._
LATIN GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

In most languages, the first part of Grammar is necessarily taken up with the forms and changes exhibited in their separate words; and in languages which, like the Latin, abound in nominal and verbal inflexions, this etymological part—or "Accidence"—occupies a most important place. In the following Grammar, the Etymology of the language is treated according to a natural system, founded upon an examination of the structure of its words; and the principles of this system will perhaps be more readily understood and appreciated, if the student is introduced to a short general view of the Four principal component parts, which are found in declined or inflected words.


The case endings of nouns, and the endings of the tenses and persons in verbs, are the most obvious peculiarity in the Latin "Accidence." These terminations at first sight present much variety and irregularity. Thus we have as Datives, mensæ, diei, domino, tussi, gradui; but an examination shows, that the real termination of the Dative is one and the same in every noun in the language,—and that it is simply the letter (i). For mensæ is contracted from mensai, a form found in actual use in the Genitive, as aulai in medio. Domino is contracted from dominoi, as may be plainly seen in the Greek declension, which gives (λόγος) λόγῳ with the (i) subscript, compared with the datives μοί, σοί, &c., and the adverbial dative ὁκοι, &c. This also explains why many datives of this declension in Latin actually end in (i), as ulla, ulli; because in these words the letter (i) has gained a greater
INTRODUCTION.

prominence than the o. *Tussi* is a contraction for *tussii*, like *ingenii,* *ingeni.* And *dies* and *gradui,* when the termination is rightly set off, exhibit the (i) without any alteration.

The same thing may be seen in *Verbs.* Thus, we have *amas,* *deles,* *audis,* *regis,* all apparently different, and yet (is) is the real termination of them all. For *amas* is contracted from *ama-is* (like *ιμαί-εις,* *ιμαῖς*); *deles* from *dele-is* (like *tristicis,* *tristes*); *audis* from *audī-is,* which makes the syllable long; while *regis* remains uncontracted, and therefore is short.

A similar explanation may be given of all the other cases of nouns, and the other persons and tenses of verbs; from whence it follows, that, strictly speaking, there is only one declension and one conjugation; the same terminations, with a few trifling varieties, being found in all.

But as contractions produce many apparent differences, a distinction of declensions and conjugations is perhaps better for beginners.

The terminations of nouns and verbs above described, are called *Affixes,* as being affixed, or added on, to mark the case or person; and they are called, *Casual,* *Temporal,* or *Personal* affixes, according as they mark the *cases* of nouns, or the *tenses* and *persons* of verbs.

2. Crude-forms.

When a noun has been stripped of its case-endings, or casual affixes, there remains a part of the word, which is not affected in declining the noun (except by accidental contraction), but continues unaltered throughout all the cases. This unaltered part is called the crude-form of the noun, and seems to represent the leading idea, or common meaning, which all the cases agree in expressing—so that they are called collectively a *noun*; though each case exhibits this common meaning differently modified, according to its own peculiar force and use.

When the crude-form ends in a consonant, it may readily be distinguished by the most cursory observation. Thus, in the word *stirps,* *stirpis,* *stirpi,* *stirpem,* *stirps,* *stirpe,* the crude-form is evidently *(stirp)*; from which all the cases may be formed by merely adding their respective *affixes.* When the crude-form
INTRODUCTION.

ends with a vowel, its discovery is not always quite so obvious; but it may still be seen in some of the cases, and especially in the ablative singular.

The formation of verbs in this respect is exactly similar to that of nouns; for there is in verbs also an unaltered part, which in use and meaning performs the same office, as we observed in nouns, and is therefore called the crude-form of the verb. Thus, in rego, regis, regebam, regam, &c., the crude-form is (rego).

This same principle of crude-forms may be observed even in English, though less obviously, on account of our meagre inflexions. Thus, defend makes defend-est, defend-eth; defends, defend-ed, &c.

The unaltered part of a noun or verb is called its crude-form, because it is (so to speak) the crude, or raw material, out of which the different cases or persons are shaped, and dressed up, and made fit for actual use. Crude-forms, therefore, must not be regarded as words really existing in the language, but as forms obtained by analysis. Although it does sometimes happen (especially in English) that the crude-form, and some of the real cases or persons, are accidentally written alike; as amor, love, is the crude-form and also the nominative case; dic the crude-form and also the imperative mood of dico, I say; so also in the English verb defend, above-mentioned.

3. Nominal, Verbal, and Adverbial Affixes, &c.

It has been before observed, that each case of a noun has its own proper affix, which carries with it its own peculiar meaning in all nouns. Thus, diei, gradui, stirpi, &c., all have the affix (i), and all have the peculiar meaning of the dative case; but their crude-forms are totally different. In the same manner, even after the casual affixes have been discarded, there may still be observed a number of classes or collections of words, of such a nature that the words in the same class have all the same termination, while the rest of the word is totally different in each. And it is to be remarked, that this similarity of termination is to be found in classes of words of every kind—substantives, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and particles—all exhibiting this
peculiar feature, and all capable of being arranged and classified, according as their terminations agree.

These terminations, it must be remembered, have nothing whatever to do with the case or person ending of the noun or verb; for they are to be seen after the casual and personal affixes have been removed, and also in adverbs, which are not declined at all. Thus, we have amator, actor, domitor, &c.; edax, vorax, audax, &c.; viresco, tumesco, inveterasco, &c.; acriter, molliter, suaviter, &c. Or, to take English examples, sweetness, goodness, soundness; hopeful, fearful, grateful, &c.

Each of these terminations has its own proper force and meaning, whatever may be the other part of the word: thus, all words ending in *tor*, signify a *male agent*, or a man who performs an action. Though it does sometimes happen that the capriciousness of custom, which will not always be confined by rules, has introduced occasional irregularities; and words are consequently found, the signification of which does not readily correspond with the proper meaning of the termination. To distinguish these terminations from those of cases and tenses, they have been called *nominal, verbal, or adverbial affixes*, according as they are found in nouns, verbs, or adverbs, &c.

4. Roots.

When all the affixes above-mentioned have been removed, together with every other part which gives any peculiar modification to the form or meaning of a word, there remains what is called the *Root*. To understand what is meant by a Root, the student must bear in mind, that in most languages words may be classed together in *families*; each family containing within it different parts of speech—substantives, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, &c.—each of which has its own appropriate force and meaning, and yet there is besides one general meaning or leading idea, which runs through all the words of the same family. Thus, in English we have *please, pleasing, pleasure, pleasurable, pleasurally, displease, displeasure, unpleasing, &c.*; or, in Latin, *amo, amor, amator, amicus, amicitia, amabilis, amabilitas, amanter, inimicus, &c.* In the English list, the general idea of *pleasing*, and in the Latin one that of *loving* is found in all the words, and is expressed
by that part of the word which remains the same in them all, and which is called the Root, or stem; namely, (PLEAS) in the one family, and (AM) in the other.

The Root, like the crude-form of a word, is evidently not always a word of the language, but is only the elementary part of the kindred words of the same family, which is discovered by analysis, and from which the words may be derived—like branches springing from one common stem. It may, however, be remarked, that in English, and other similar languages, there will often be an awkwardness and irregularity in arranging such families of words; because some of them are formed from Roots which belong to another language. Thus, love, lovely, amiable, &c., belong in meaning to the same family; but the last word is derived from the Latin Root (AM), instead of the English one (lov). This irregularity is seldom found in Latin or Greek.

Upon observing any family of words it may be further seen, that some of the words are primary branches, or simple derivations, from the Root; while others may be called secondary, or tertiary derivatives. Thus, pleasure is simply derived from the Root (PLEAS), but pleasurable, though containing the same Root, is derived immediately from pleasure. So also in the Latin family, from (AM) is derived primarily amicus, secondarily amicitia. And the observance of this distinction is often important.

Lastly; it will be seen that a Root and a Crude-form are in some respects alike; yet they have this very marked difference, that a Root is the common stock of a whole family of words, embracing different parts of speech, but a Crude-form is only the common stock of a single noun or verb. Thus, a Root is the simplest element to which a word can readily be reduced; but a Crude-form may be a primary, secondary, or tertiary branch from the Root, and, indeed, may be compounded to any extent. Thus, in amabilitas, the Root is (AM), but the Crude-form is (AMABILITAT). The practice of tracing words to their Roots is very useful in enabling students to gain a clear perception of the meaning of derivative words, as well in English as in other languages.

In observing the formation of words from their Roots or Crude-forms, it is sometimes necessary to attend to the influence of Euphony and the effects of Time.
1. When the usual formation of a word would produce a harsh or unpleasing sound, it was often removed by the change or omission of letters. These Euphonic changes may for the most part be reduced to Rules, as they were made with some regularity and precision. *Fr. Ango, refri Ingo; cAno, tucicEn, tubicInis; clauDo, clauSi*, are instances of Euphonic changes.

2. Time produces changes in all languages; and although the etymological forms of the Latin language have suffered comparatively but little from this source, yet its influence may be seen. Changes of this kind can seldom be reduced to Rules, as they depend on no fixed principle. Yet two different effects may be observed; for the *longest* forms are often the oldest, and time and the progress of refinement shorten them; and yet *short* forms are sometimes the oldest, and are lengthened by the subsequent addition of letters: thus, annuo, I assent, made originally the Perfect annūvī, then annūī, lastly annūī. On the other hand, sono, I sound, seems to have had originally the Crude-form (son), making the Infinitive sonēre; but later writers make it (sonā), sonāre.

In the Syntax, two things require the student’s continual attention.

1st. What *case* or *mood*, &c. any construction demands.

2nd. What it is that is put in that particular case or mood.

This makes observation and reflection necessary, and tends to remove the error (so common to beginners) of judging of Latin idioms by English ones, instead of considering the real force of the construction.
LETTERS.

GRAMMAR.

Grammar may be divided into two parts, Etymology and Syntax.

Etymology teaches the forms and changes of separate words.

Syntax teaches the connexion and arrangement of words in sentences.

Obs. Prosody is not a part of Grammar, though necessary for understanding the construction of verse.

ETYMOLOGY.

LETTERS.

The letters are twenty-four in number, being the same as those of the English Alphabet, but without K and W.

Aa, Bb, Cc, Dd, Ee, Ff, Gg, Hh, Ii, Jj, Ll, Mm, Nn, Oo, Pp, Qq, Rr, Ss, Tt, Uu, Vv, Xx, Yy, Zz.

A Diphthong is two vowels united to form one sound.

The diphthongs are six, æ, ai, au, ei, eu, ã.

Obs. 1. The letters are commonly pronounced in Latin exactly as they are in English.

They may then be arranged as follows:—

I. Vowels, a, e, i, o, u, y. II. Consonants, subdivided into—

1. Liquids, l, m, n, r.
2. Sharp and flat letters, which correspond with each other,
   Sharp, p, c, g, t, f, s.
   Flat, b, d, g, ñ, v, z.
3. Double letters, j, x.
4. Aspirate, (or hard breathing,) ð.

Obs. 2. The above is really an arrangement of the English Alphabet, not the Latin. The Latin letters seem to have been originally,


K ceased to be used after C became its substitute, C having been once sounded as G.

Y and Z were added to express the Greek ù and ñ.

I and V were used both as vowels and consonants; but modern printers have added J for the consonant sound of I, and U for the vowel sound of V.
LETTERS.

Pronunciation.

The true sound of some Latin letters certainly differed much from the English pronunciation.

The vowels $a, e, i, o, u$, when long or full were probably sounded as in the words father, they, machine, hole, rule.

$J$ and $V$, the consonants of $i$ and $u$, were pronounced like the English $y$ and $w$, therefore the Latin $j$ is not a double consonant, but may, together with $v$, be considered as a semi-vowel.

$C$ and $g$ were always pronounced hard, as in come and go. They correspond to the Greek letters $\kappa$ and $\gamma$.

$Q$ was always followed by $u$, and had the sound of $k$ or $c$ hard.

$Y$ and $z$, expressing the Greek letters $u$ and $\xi$, were used only in Greek words. Therefore the Latin $z$ is a double letter, compounded of $sd$ or $ds$.

Hence the letters may be more correctly arranged in Latin as follows:—

I. Vowels, $a, e, i, o, u$ (Greek $y$).

II. Consonants, subdivided into semi-vowels and mutes.

The semi-vowels are liquids, $l, m, n, r$.

vowel-consonants, $j, v$.

sibilants, $s, z$ ($\xi$), (Greek $z$).

The mutes are (tenues) sharps, $p, c, q, t$.

(medio) flats, $b, g, d$.

The Consonants may also be divided according to the oryans with which they are pronounced: thus—

Labials (pronounced with the lip), $p, b, f, v, m$.

Gutturals (pronounced with the throat), $c, g, q, g$.

Linguals (pronounced with the tongue), $t, d, l, n, r$.

Palatale (pronounced on the palate), $j$.

Sibilant (pronounced with a hissing), $s, x, z$.

Obs. 3. The Diphthongs probably united the simple sounds of their two letters, giving a predominant force to one of them; they would then correspond nearly with the diphthongs in the following English words:—

$\alpha$, $ai$, $au$, $ei$, $eu$, $\alpha$.

sleight, aye, out, weight, you, boy.
CHANGES OF LETTERS.

Many changes of letters take place in the inflexion, or composition of words, the general object of which appears to have been Euphony—or the production of a more pleasing sound.

GENERAL RULES OF EUPHONY.

Vowels.

The short vowels are the most liable to change.

Rule 1. When vowels are changed, the heavier forms take the lighter vowels, and the lighter forms the heavier vowels.

Words become heavier by being lengthened, or by having more consonants at the end of a syllable: thus cecini is heavier than cāno; and princeps, than principis.

The short vowels may be arranged in the following order, to show their comparative weight, a, u, o, i, e. Of these a is the heaviest, and e the lightest.

Rule 2. The most common changes are between a, i, e, as cAno, cecIni, concEntum. In these changes (i) is generally found in open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel), and (e) in closed syllables, (i.e. ending in one or more consonants), as cAno, corticEn, corticI-nis. [See Compound Verbs.]

Rule 3. A short (i) is not allowed before r, but is changed into (e), the r being thrown back upon it, and making the syllable a close one; thus cinis, cinēr-is; pārio, pepēr-i (not pepe-rī). The same is sometimes the case with t and d, especially when followed by i; as pātior, perpet-ior; grādior, ingred-ior. On the contrary, (i) is often found before a final s, as if it left the syllable open; as cinis, pulsīs.

Rule 4. Changes are also found between a and u; u and o or e; o and i; as cAlco, concUlco; ebUr, ebOris; opUs, opEris; ordO, ordinis.

Rule 5. The diphthong (ae) is sometimes changed into (i) in open syllables; as lĀdo, illīdo; Āequus, inIquus.

Consonants.

Rule 1. J and v being the consonants of i and u, are often interchanged with them; as, et-jam, etiam; (cuius) cujus; silva, silua; tenuis, tenvis.

Rule 2. The flat consonants b and g, when they come before s or t, are generally changed into p and c, their corresponding sharps; as sorbo, sorp-si, sorp-tum; rego (re-to-si) recti, rec-tum.
Rule 3. D and t, are either lost or changed into s, when they come before s; as, claudo, clau-si; cedo, ces-si; (lapis-s) lapis; utor, u-sus; patior, pas-sus; (Samnit-s) Samnis; c, g, r, l, s, are also occasionally lost; and b, m, r, occasionally changed, before s; v also is sometimes lost before t. [See the Irregular Verbs.]

Rule 4. B, d, m, n, r, are often assimilated to the consonant which follows them.
1. B is assimilated before c, f, g, p, and sometimes before m, r.
2. D is assimilated before all consonants, except b, j, m, r.
3. M is assimilated before the liquids l, m, n, r; remains before the labials b, p; and becomes n before other consonants.
4. N is assimilated before the liquids l, m, n, r.
5. R is sometimes assimilated before l.

N.B. The changes under Rule 4, are seen principally in verbs compounded with prepositions. [See Prepositions in Composition.]

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The principal parts of speech are three, Nouns, Verbs, Particles.
Nouns are declined; Verbs are conjugated; Particles are undecorated.

Nouns include Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns.

Particles include Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and Interjections.
The parts of speech are therefore often reckoned as eight.

NOUNS.

Numbers.
Nouns have two numbers, the Singular and the Plural.
The singular speaks of one: as, pater, a father.
The plural speaks of more than one: as, patres, fathers.

Genders.
The genders of nouns are three, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.
Nouns.

Nouns which may be used either as masculine or feminine without restriction, are said to be *Doubtful* in their gender: as, *finis*, an end.

Nouns which are masculine when they denote the male kind, and feminine when they denote the female kind, are said to be *Common* in their gender: as, *homo bonus*, a good man; *homo bona*, a good woman.

Nouns, which with one gender denote both sexes, are called *Epicène*: as, *passer* (masculine), meaning either male or female sparrow.

**Cases.**

1. Nouns have six cases in each number.

   1. The *Nominative.*  
   2. "  *Genitive.*  
   3. "  *Dative.*  
   4. The *Accusative.*  
   5. "  *Vocative.*  

2. The cases express the different relations of the noun; or the different ways in which the thing denoted by the noun may be used. The real force and meaning of each case can therefore be learned only from the syntax.

3. In English, the cases are generally expressed by a preposition: as, *of a* father; *to* a father; *from* a father.

4. In Latin, the cases are distinguished by their endings.

5. In every noun, there is one part of the word which remains the same throughout all the cases; and to this part a letter or syllable is added, to form each particular case.

6. That part of the noun, which remains unaltered, is called the *Crude-form* of the noun.

7. The letter or syllable, which is added to form the case, is called the *Casual affix*, or *casual termination*.

8. Each case has its own proper affix, which seems to have been originally the same in every noun, but
in some instances has been slightly altered by custom.

9. The last letter of the crude-form is often contracted with the casual affix, and thus produces a difference in the ending of the word.

10. The crude-form of any noun may be best discovered from the ablative singular.

**Casual Affixes.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Singular.)</th>
<th>(Plural.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ... (varies).</td>
<td>Nom. ... <em>ES</em> or <em>I</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ... <em>IS</em> or <em>I</em>.</td>
<td>Gen. ... <em>RUM</em> or <em>UM</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ... <em>I</em>.</td>
<td>Dat. ... <em>BUS</em> or <em>IS</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. ... <em>eM</em>.</td>
<td>Acc. ... <em>ES</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. as the Nom. or shortened.</td>
<td>Voc. as the Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ... (<em>e</em>)</td>
<td>Abl. as the Dat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. (a.) The Nom. sing. is sometimes the same as the crude-form; as *mensa*, a table (*MENSA*).

(b.) Masculines and feminines commonly add *s* to the crude-form in the Nom. sing. as *turris*, a tower (*TURRI*).

(c.) Sometimes letters are dropped or changed in the Nom.; as (*LEON*) *leo*, a lion; (*MILIT*) *miles*, a soldier.

**Obs.** Many crude-forms, ending in *r*, seem originally to have ended in *s*, which makes the Nom. sometimes appear irregular; thus *arbos* or *arbor*, a tree; *opus*, and not (*OPER*), work; *pectus* and not (*PECTOR*), the breast.

2. In nouns of the neuter gender, the Nom. Acc. and Voc. are alike in both numbers, and in the plural always end in *a*.

**Obs. 1.** The *proper* affix for the Nom. sing. seems to have been (*e*). But in some words the *s* was dropped; and some, from irregularity, perhaps never had it.

Neuter nouns, strictly speaking, had no Nom. or Voc.; but when these cases were wanted for grammatical convenience the form of the Acc. was used.

**Obs. 2.** The longest, and probably oldest, affix for the Gen. was *ius*, which is still found in several words, such as *ulus*, *unus*, &c. It may be compared with the Greek *ios*, seen in such words as
SUBSTANTIVES.

λόγοι(s), λόγου. Is and i may be considered as shortened from is. Even those declensions, which seem entirely to have discarded the s, show symptoms of its presence; for we have pater-familias, the father of a family; Dies-piter, the father of day.

Obs. 3. The oldest affix for the Dat. appears to have been bi, which is still seen in the pronouns tibi, sibi, and in several adverbial datives, ubi, ibi, &c.

Obs. 4. The affix for the Acc. may be regarded as simply (m); the e being only a connecting vowel inserted in the consonant declension; as lapidem for (lapidem).

Obs. 5. The affix for the Abl. seems to have been originally the same as that of the Dative (i); especially in the consonant declension. Probably there was at first no distinction between the Dat. and Abl. cases; as the Plural still shows. Hence several words retain both i and e in the Abl.

As (e), the affix of the Abl., disappears in all declensions except the consonant one, the Abl. is sometimes considered as exhibiting the simple crude-form of the noun, the (e) being added merely to soften a final consonant. The vowel of the crude-form is, however, long in the Abl., as if from contraction.

Obs. 6. The Dat. plural is most simply formed by adding (s) to the affix of the Dat. sing. Thus bi makes bis; as tibi, vobis (with which may be compared the shortened form bûs, used in many nouns); and i makes is, as mensa-i, (mensa-is), mensis.

Obs. 7. The Acc. plural in Greek seems to be formed by adding (s) to the Acc. sing. as λόγον (λόγον-s) λόγους; τιτάνα, τιτάνας. The Latin might probably be formed in the same way, the e being put for ems, which will account for the (ē) being long.

SUBSTANTIVES.

1. A substantive is the name of any thing or object; as mensa, a table; homo, a man.

2. Substantives are either common or proper.

3. A common noun denotes a whole class of things, and expresses the common nature which belongs to each; as homo, man.

4. A proper name denotes one individual person; as, Quintus, Publius.
Declensions.

The Declensions of substantives are six, and are distinguished by the last letter of the crude-form.

The crude-form ends in—

| 1st Dec. in A as | mensa | table | MENSA. |
| 2nd " " E " | dies | day | DIE. |
| 3rd " " I " | tussis | cough | TUSSI. |
| 4th " " O " | dominus | lord | DOMINO. |
| 5th " " U " | gradus | step | GRADU. |
| 6th any consonant | cantor | singer | CANTOR. |

FIRST DECLENSION.—Crude-form ends in A.

Nominatives in this declension end in a, like the crude-form; as mensa (f), a table.

**SING.**

| Nom. mensā, a table. | Nom. mensae, tables. |
| Gen. mensae, of a table. | Gen. mensarum, of tables. |
| Dat. mensae, to a table. | Dat. mensis, to tables. |
| Acc. mensam, a table. | Acc. mensas, tables. |
| Abl. mensā, by a table. | Abl. mensis, by tables. |

**Formation.**

**SING.**

| N. mensa, like the crude-form. | N. mensa-I, contracted —α. |
| G. mensa-I, contracted —α. | G. mensa-RUM. |
| D. mensa-I " —α. | D. mensa-IS, contracted —is. |
| Ac. mensa-em " —am. Ac. mensa-ES " —us. |
| V. mensa, like the Nom. | V. mensa-I, like the Nom. |
| Ab. mensa-e, contracted —ē. | Ab. mensa-IS, like the Dat. |

**OBS. 1.** The uncontracted form of the Gen. sing. is used by the older Roman writers, and was occasionally retained in poetry: as, Dixit pictā ci vestis et auri, rich in embroidered garments and gold.

**OBS. 2.** Familia, a family, makes sometimes familias in the Gen., when compounded with pater, mater, filius or filia: as, pater-familias, the father of a family; Gen. patris-familias, &c.
SECOND DECLENSION.

Obs. 3. Dea, a goddess; filia, a daughter; equa, a mare; mulu, a mule; nata, a daughter; anima, a soul; liberta, a freed-woman, and some others, generally have bus, instead of is, in the Dat. and Abl. plural, as deabus, filiabus; to distinguish them from the masculines Deus, filius, &c.

Obs. 4. Greek nouns of this declension end in as, es, and ē: as, Æneas, Anchises, Hermioneē.


Patronymics in des, as Pelides, are of Greek origin, and are declined like Anchises.

SECOND DECLENSION.—Crude-form ends in E.

Nominatives in this declension end in es, s being added to the crude-form: as, dies (f), a day.

Dat. diei. Dat. dieibus.
Acc. diem. Acc. dies.
Voc. dies. Voc. dies.
Abl. diē. Abl. diebus.

Formation.

SING. Plur.
N. die-S. N. die-ES, contracted —ēs.
G. die-I. G. die-RUM.
D. die-I. D. die-BUS.
Ac. die-eM, contracted —em. Ac. die-ES, contracted —ēs.
V. die-S, like the Nom. V. die-ES, like the Nom.
Ab. die-ē, contracted —ē. Ab. die-BUS, like the Dat.

Obs. 1. The Gen. and Dat. sing. of this declension sometimes contract eī into ē; as diē for diei.

Obs. 2. Only dies, a day; res, a thing; and species, a form, have the plural complete. Acies, an edge; facies, a face; effigies, an image; series, an order; and spes, hope, have only the Nom. Acc. and Voc. plural. The rest have no plural at all.

Obs. 3. Greek nouns of this declension are undecorated plurals: as, cete, whales.
THIRD DECLENsion.—Crude-form ends in I.

Nominatives of this declension end in er, is, e, ar, and al: as, imber (m), rain; tussis (f), a cough; mare (n), the sea; calcar (n), a spur; animal (n), an animal.

Dat. tussi. Dat. tussibus.
Acc. tussim. Acc. tusses.
Voc. tussis. Voc. tusses.
Abl. tussi. Abl. tussibus.

Formation.

Sing. Plur.
N. tussi-S. N. tussi-ES, contracted —ēs.
G. tussi-IS, contracted —is. G. tussi-UM.
D. tussi-I —i. D. tussi-BUS.
V. tussi-IS, like the Nom. V. tussi-ES, like the Dat.
Ab. tussi-e, contracted —i. Ab. tussi-BUS, like the Dat.

In the same manner are declined nouns in er, e, ar, and al.

Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>(imberi)</th>
<th>(marī)</th>
<th>(calcarī)</th>
<th>(animalī)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imber,</td>
<td>mare,</td>
<td>calcar,</td>
<td>animal,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbris,</td>
<td>maris,</td>
<td>calcāris,</td>
<td>animalālis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbri,</td>
<td>mari,</td>
<td>calcāri,</td>
<td>animalī,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbrem,</td>
<td>mare,</td>
<td>calcar,</td>
<td>animal,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imber,</td>
<td>mare,</td>
<td>calcar,</td>
<td>animal,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbri (e),</td>
<td>mari.</td>
<td>calcāri,</td>
<td>animalī.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>(imbrēs,</th>
<th>marīa,</th>
<th>calcaria,</th>
<th>animalia,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imbrēs,</td>
<td>marībus,</td>
<td>calcarībus,</td>
<td>animalībus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbrē,</td>
<td>maria,</td>
<td>calcaria,</td>
<td>animalia,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbrēs,</td>
<td>maria,</td>
<td>calcaria,</td>
<td>animalia,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbrēbus,</td>
<td>maribus.</td>
<td>calcarībus.</td>
<td>animalībus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THIRD DECLENSION.

Obs. 1. There is a great tendency in this declension to drop the (i) of the crude-form, or to change (i) into (ε); hence arise different degrees of irregularity in the Acc. and Abl. sing. of nouns in is, which the following table will explain:

1. Always regular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amussis</td>
<td>a rule.</td>
<td>ravis</td>
<td>hoarseness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buris</td>
<td>a plough handle.</td>
<td>sinapis</td>
<td>mustard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cucumis</td>
<td>a cucumber.</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>thirst.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mephitis</td>
<td>a sulphureous exhalation.</td>
<td>tussis</td>
<td>a cough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>violence.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Accusative, IM or EM.—Ablative, I or E.

(a) More commonly regular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>febris</td>
<td>a fever.</td>
<td>puppis</td>
<td>the poop of a ship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pelvis</td>
<td>a basin.</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>a tower.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) More commonly EM and E.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aqualis</td>
<td>a ewer.</td>
<td>messis</td>
<td>harvest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clavis</td>
<td>a key.</td>
<td>resitis</td>
<td>a rope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navis</td>
<td>a ship.</td>
<td>sementis</td>
<td>sowing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Acc. IM or EM.—Abl. I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>securis</td>
<td>an axe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strigilis</td>
<td>a scraper.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Acc. EM.—Abl. I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aprilis</td>
<td>April.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edulis</td>
<td>an edile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tristis</td>
<td>sad, and all adjectives in is.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Acc. EM.—Abl. I or E.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amnis</td>
<td>a river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anguis</td>
<td>a snake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avis</td>
<td>a bird.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civis</td>
<td>a citizen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classis</td>
<td>a fleet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fustis</td>
<td>a club.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignis</td>
<td>fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbis</td>
<td>a sphere, or globe.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Acc. EM.—Abl. E.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>piscis</td>
<td>a fish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentis</td>
<td>a thorn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torris</td>
<td>a firebrand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vectis</td>
<td>a lever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vermis</td>
<td>a worm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And many others.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Canis, a dog; panis, bread; juvenis, a youth, cast out the (i) even from the Gen. plural, and thus are declined like nouns of the consonant declension: as, canum, &c.

Obs. 2. When the crude-form ends in (eri), (ari), (al1), the Nom. sing. often ends in er, ar, al; and neutrals sometimes change (i) of the crude-form into (ε) in the Nom. Thus (imberi), imber; (calcari), calcas; (animali), animal; (mari), mare.
THIRD DECLENSION.

Obs. 3. Nouns in *er* drop the (*e*) before *r* in declining; as *imber,* *imbris*; and they make the Acc. in *en*. *September,* and other names of months, make the Abl. in *(i)*; other nouns in *er,* as *imber,* make the Abl. in *(i)* or *(e)*, most commonly *(e).*

Obs. 4. Nouns in *e, ar,* and *al,* which are *always* neuter, make the Abl. regularly in *(i).* Nouns of this kind closely resemble the neuter form of adjectives in *is* (like *tristis, triste*), those in *ar,* and *al,* having apparently lost the *(e).* Indeed some of these words are merely adjectives used alone, and thus gaining the force of substantives; as, *insignis,* remarkable, *insigne,* a mark; *animalis,* animated, *animal,* an animal.

Obs. 5. Some nouns seem to belong both to the 2nd and 3rd Dec., and to have a crude-form varying between *(e)* and *(i)*; as, *nubes,* a cloud, *(nube)* and *(nubi),* which is thus declined:—

Pt. " *nubes,* " *nubium,* " *nubibus,* " *nubes,* " *nubibus.*

Nouns of this kind form a distinct class. They have *ēs* in the Nom., *en* and *ē* in the Acc. and Abl. sing. In the other cases the forms of the I—Dec. are seen. *Fames,* hunger, alone has the *(e)* long in the Abl. *famē,* being thus more closely connected with the E—declension.

Diminutives from words of this class exhibit the *(e)* like nouns of the E—Dec. Thus *nubes,* *nubēcula,* like *dies,* *diēcula.*

Yet some derivatives omit the vowel altogether; as *nubes,* *nubo,* I veil; and *plebs,* the people, *(plebes)*; *trabs,* a beam, *(trabes)*, have dropped the vowel in the Nom. sing.

A few nominatives in *es,* appear to have once ended in *es,* as *felis* or *feles,* a cat; *fides,* or *fides,* a string.

Obs. 6. Greek nouns of this declension end in *is* and *ys,* as *poēsis,* poetry; *chelys,* a lyre.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Poēsi.</td>
<td>Chelyi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Poēsim, or -in.</td>
<td>Chelym, or -yn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Poēsi.</td>
<td>Chelye, or <em>y.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FOURTH DECLENSION.

FOURTH DECLENSION.—Crude-form ends in O.

Nominatives of this declension end in us, r, and um: as, dominus (m), a lord; puer (m), a boy; regnum (n), a kingdom.

Dat. domino. Dat. dominis.
Acc. dominum. Acc. dominos.
Voc. domine. Voc. domini.
Abl. domino. Abl. dominis.

Formation.

Sing. Plur.
N. domino-S, u for o, —us. N. domino-I, contracted —i.
G. domino-I, contracted —i. G. domino-RUM.
D. domino-I —o. D. domino-IS, contracted —is.
V. shortened form of Nom. —e. V. domino-I, like the Nom.
Ab. domino-e contracted —o. Ab. domino-IS, like the Dat.

In the same manner are declined nouns in er and um.

(puero). (regno).
Nom. puer, pueri, regnum, regna,
Gen. pueri, puerorum, regni, regnorum,
Dat. puero, pueris, regno, regnis,
Acc. puerum, pueros, regnum, regna,
Voc. puer, pueri, regnum, regna,
Abl. puero. pueris. regno. regnis.

Obs. 1. When the crude-form ends in (éro), the Nom. sing. often ends in er, the (o) being dropped; as (puero), puer; and the (e) is sometimes omitted before r in declining; as ager, a field; G. agri, D. agro, Ac. agrum, V. ager, Ab. agro, &c.

Obs. 2. The Voc. sing. of filius, a son; genius, a genius; and of proper names in ius, contracts ie into i: as, (filiis), fili, O son! Deus, God, makes O Deus!

Obs. 3. The Gen. plur. is often contracted fromorum into um, especially in verse: as, dominorum, dominum.
Obs. 4. Deus has in the Plur. N. Dei, Dii, or Di; D. and Ab. Deis, Dies, or Dis.

Obs. 5. Greek nouns of this declension end in ὁς, ὁν, ὁς, ὅ; as Androgeos, Ilión (Troy), Athos, Manto.

|-------|------------|--------|--------|--------|

---

**FIFTH DECLENSION.**—*Crude-form ends in U.*

Nominatives of this declension end in ūs and ĕ; as, gradus (m), a step; cornu (n), a horn.

**Sing.** Nom. gradūs.  
Gen. gradūs.  
Dat. gradui.  
Acc. gradum.  
Voc. gradūs.  
Abl. gradu.

**Plur.** Nom. gradūs.  
Gen. graduum.  
Dat. gradibus.  
Acc. gradūs.  
Voc. gradūs.  
Abl. gradibus.

**Formation.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. gradu-S.</td>
<td>N. gradu-ES, contracted —ūs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. gradu-IS, contracted —ūs.</td>
<td>G. gradu-UM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. gradu-I.</td>
<td>D. gradu-BUS, i for u, —ibus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. gradu-S, like the Nom.</td>
<td>V. gradu-ES, like the Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. gradu-e, contracted —ū.</td>
<td>Ab. gradu-BUS, like the Dat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns in ĕ are undeducible in the singular; as, cornu: but the plural is declined.

**Nom. cornua.**  
**Dat. cornibus.**  
**Voc. cornua.**  
**Gen. cornuum.**  
**Acc. cornua.**  
**Abl. cornibus.**

Obs. 1. The Gen. sing. is sometimes found uncontracted; as, anus, anuis, an old woman.

Obs. 2. The Dat. sing. sometimes contracted wi into w: as, curru for currui.
SIXTH DECLENSION.

Obs. 3. Older writers always wrote *ubus* in the Dat. plur. for *ibus*; and *ubus* was retained in several words: as, *arcus*, a bow, *arcubus*; *lacus*, a lake, *lacubus*.

Obs. 4. Greek nouns of this declension end in *us* and *eus*; as, *Jesus, Orpheus*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>Jesus</th>
<th>Orpheus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Jesu.</td>
<td>Orphee, or -ei.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SIXTH DECLENSION.—Crude-form ends in a Consonant.

Nominatives of the sixth declension end in *c, l, a, n, s, t, o, r, x*; as, *lac* (n), milk; *sol* (m), the sun; *poema* (n), a poem; *pecten* (m), a comb; *stirps* (f), a stock; *caput* (n), a head; *leo* (m), a lion; *cantor* (m), a singer; *rex* (m), a king.

In the sixth declension, no contraction takes place, but each case is formed by the mere addition of the affix.

**SING.** Nom. *cantor.*

Gen. *cantōris.*

Dat. *cantōri.*

Acc. *cantōrem.*

Voc. *cantor.*

Abl. *cantōre.*

**PLUR.** Nom. *cantōres.*

Gen. *cantōrum.*

Dat. *cantoribus.*

Acc. *cantōres.*

Voc. *cantōres.*

Abl. *cantoribus.*

**Formation.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. <em>cantor,</em> like the Crude-form.</td>
<td>N. <em>cantor-ES.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>cantor-IS.</em></td>
<td>G. <em>cantor-UM.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>cantor-I.</em></td>
<td>D. <em>cantor-iBUS,</em> i inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. <em>cantor-eM.</em></td>
<td>Ac. <em>cantor-ES.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. <em>cantor.</em></td>
<td>V. <em>cantor-ES,</em> like the Nom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obs. 1. Nouns of the consonant declension have a great variety of terminations in the Nom. sing., in which the crude-form is often much disguised.
The following table shows all the common terminations, with the Genitive case and crude-form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>poem</th>
<th>poematis</th>
<th>poemat.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>luc</td>
<td>lactis</td>
<td>lact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>solis</td>
<td>sol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mel</td>
<td>Titan</td>
<td>mellis</td>
<td>mell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>siren</td>
<td>sirenis</td>
<td>sirén.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomen</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>nominis</td>
<td>nomín.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>delphin</td>
<td>delphinis</td>
<td>delphín.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>leo</td>
<td>leonis</td>
<td>león.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar</td>
<td>jubar</td>
<td>ordinis</td>
<td>ordin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
<td>ver</td>
<td>verris</td>
<td>vér.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ur</td>
<td>fur</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>fort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murmur</td>
<td>murmur</td>
<td>murmúris</td>
<td>murmur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ebur</td>
<td>ivory</td>
<td>ebúris</td>
<td>edúr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>lampas</td>
<td>lampádis</td>
<td>lampád.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mas</td>
<td>male</td>
<td>máris</td>
<td>már.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vas</td>
<td>vessel</td>
<td>vásis</td>
<td>vás.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>as (a coin)</td>
<td>assis</td>
<td>ass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pielas</td>
<td>piety</td>
<td>piétatis</td>
<td>piétat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anas</td>
<td>duck</td>
<td>anátis</td>
<td>anat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gigas</td>
<td>giant</td>
<td>gigantis</td>
<td>gigant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>merces</td>
<td>mercédís</td>
<td>mercéd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pes</td>
<td>foot</td>
<td>pédís</td>
<td>péd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quies</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>quétis</td>
<td>quiét.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seges</td>
<td>corn</td>
<td>segétis</td>
<td>segét.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miles</td>
<td>soldier</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>milit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>cuspidis</td>
<td>cuspidis</td>
<td>cuspid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanguis</td>
<td>blood</td>
<td>sanguinis</td>
<td>sanguín.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulvis</td>
<td>dust</td>
<td>pulvérís</td>
<td>pulvér.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glis</td>
<td>dormouse</td>
<td>glíris</td>
<td>glír.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lits</td>
<td>strife</td>
<td>litis</td>
<td>lit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os</td>
<td>custodies</td>
<td>custódías</td>
<td>custód.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flor</td>
<td>flower</td>
<td>flóris</td>
<td>flór.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td>ossis</td>
<td>oss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cos</td>
<td>whet-stone</td>
<td>cótis</td>
<td>cót.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us</td>
<td>incus</td>
<td>incudis</td>
<td>incúd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pecus</td>
<td>cattle</td>
<td>pecidís</td>
<td>pecíd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opus</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>opérís</td>
<td>opér.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>body</td>
<td>corpúris</td>
<td>corpúr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tellus</td>
<td>earth</td>
<td>tellúris</td>
<td>tellúr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtus</td>
<td>virtue</td>
<td>virtútis</td>
<td>virtút.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SIXTH DECLENSION.

bs trabs beam trābis TRĀB.
ms hyems winter hyēmis HYĒM.
us frons bough frondis FROND.
frops forehead frontis FRONT.
ps stirps stock stirpis STIRP.
rs pars part partis PART.
aus laus praise laudis LAUD.
ut caput head capitis CAPIT.
x nex death nēcis NEC.
lex law légis LEG.
nix snow nivis NIV.

Obs. 2. Crude-forms of the consonant declension are found ending in every simple consonant except f, j, and q.

B as trab N. trabs. N as leon N. leo.
C " nec " nex. P " stirp " stirps.
D " ped " pes. R " ebor " ébor.
G " leg " lex. S " oss " os.
L " sol " sol. T " part " pars.
M " hyem " hyems. V " niv (NIG) " nix.

Obs. 3. Rules for forming the Nom. sing. from the crude-form.

N.B. 1. In the consonant declension the last vowel of the Nom. sing. often differs from the corresponding vowel of the other cases; as princEps, a chief, princIpis; corpUs, body, corpOris.

2. This variation is seen only when the vowel is short; and it follows the general rule that “lighter forms take the heavier vowels.” [See Rules of Euphony, Rule 1.]

3. When the vowel thus varies it matters not which is taken for the crude-form; thus princeps, principis, crude-form (princep) or (princip). In either case the vowel must be changed in declining the noun; and in this instance neither (e) nor (i) is the radical vowel, since they come from capio (cap). The same is the case with ordU, ordinis, order; crude-form (ordīn) or (ordōn); and all others in which the vowel varies.

4. It is simpler and easier to take that vowel for the crude-form, which is seen in the oblique cases of the noun; as princeps, (princip); ordU, (ordin); opus, (oper).

Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

Rule 1. Crude-forms in b, c, g, m, p, add (s) to the Nom. sing.; as (trab), trabs; (fornac), fornax; (leg), lex; (hyem), hyems; (stirp), stirps.

* Nivis is perhaps a corruption of nīgis; the g appears in the verb ningo. A similar connexion between vs and x is seen in vivo, I live, visi, victum.
SIXTH DECLENSION.

N.B. Short (i) of the crude-form becomes e in the Nom. sing., except in monosyllables, as (célīb), célebs, unmarried; (vérīc), vertex, a top. [See Rules of Euphony, Rule 2.] Yet matrix, a snake; filix, fern; coxendix, the hip; and appendix, appendix; retain the (i).

Rule 2. Crude-forms in d and t, add (s) to the Nom. sing.; but the d and t are dropped: as (frond), frons, leaf; (part), pars, part: a few words of Greek origin drop nt before s; as (gīgant), gīgas, giant.

N.B. When the crude-form ends in (it) the (i) becomes e in the Nom. sing.; as (mīlit), mīles (as if from mīlets); but crude-forms ending in (id) retain the i in the Nom., as (cuspīd), cuspis.

Rule 3. Crude-forms in l, r, s, remain unaltered in the Nom. sing.; as (sōl), sol; (amīr), amōr; (vas), vās.
Nouns in (r) sometimes have the older form in s, for the Nom. sing.; as (flōr), flos; (tellūr), tellūs. And when (s) is double in the crude-form, one of them is dropped; as (ass), as.

N.B. When the crude-form ends in (ēr), the ē becomes i in the Nom. whenever the (r) is changed to s; as (pulvēr), pulvis. [Rules of Euphony, Rule 3.]

Rule 4. Final (n) of the crude-form is generally dropped in the Nom. sing., and short (i) preceding changed into o; as (léon), leo; (ordīn), ordo.

The (n) is retained in some Greek words, as sīren, delphīn; and also in ren, kidney; splen, spleen; pecten, comb; (sanguis or) sangwīn, blood; (polīs, or) pollen, meal; and derivatives from cano, I sing; as cornīcen, a horn-blower.

N.B. When the (n) is retained, a short (i) becomes e in the Nom. sing.; as (pectīn), pecten. [Rules of Euphony, Rule 2.]

Neuter Nouns.

Rule 1. Crude-forms of neuter nouns remain unaltered in the Nom. sing.; as (alec), alec; (ver), ver, spring; but one of two final consonants is generally dropped; as, (lact), lac, milk; (cord), cor, heart; (mell), mel, honey; (farr), far, corn.

N.B. A short (i) becomes (c) in the Nom. sing., as in masculine nouns; as (carmīn), carmen, song. [Rules of Euphony, Rule 2.]

Rule 2. Crude-forms in (r) have often the older form in s for the Nom. sing.; as (rück), rūs, the country; (er), ēs, brass.

N.B. Short e and o, become u in the Nom. sing. whenever the final (r) is changed to s; and o is sometimes changed to u, even when the (r) is retained in the Nom., as (opēr), opus; (corpūr), corpus; (ebūr), ebūr.

Rule 3. Crude-forms in (ät), are of Greek origin, and drop the (t) in the Nom. sing.; as (poēmat), poema.
Nouns.

Obs. 4. Double crude-forms.

Some nouns have a double crude-form, belonging to the consonant and I—declension; as pars (part), or (parti). The (i) then commonly appears in the Gen. plur.

Nouns which have a double crude-form are—

1. Monosyllables, whose crude-form ends in two consonants; as stirps (stirp), or (stirpi), Gen. plur. stirpium; except the two Greek words, lynx and sphinx.

Also the monosyllables mas, male; cas, vessel; lis, strife; glis, dormouse; cos, whetstone; dos, dowry; mus, mouse; nix, snow; (faux) jaw; make the Gen. plur. in ium; fraus, fraud; and laus, praise; make ium or um.

2. Polysyllables, whose crude-form ends in (nt) and (rt); as cliens, client; (client), or (clienti). Yet the Gen. plur. in such words ends in ium or um.

Some words also in as (crude-form at) are sometimes found with the Gen. plur. in ium; as civitas, civitatem.

Obs. 5. Nouns of the I—, O— and consonant declension, are found with the Nom. sing. ending in er; as imber, rain; socer, father-in-law; pater, father. They may be thus distinguished:—

If the noun is of the I— Dec., the crude-form ends in (er), and the Gen. plur. in ium; as imber, (imberi, imbri), imbrium.

If the noun is of the consonant Dec. the crude-form ends in (er), and the Gen. plur. in um; as, pater, (pater, patr), patrum.

If the noun is of the O— Dec. the crude-form ends in (ero), and it is easily known by the Gen. sing. in (i); as socer, (socero), socier.

Obs. 6. Some nouns which appear to have lost a consonant from the end of their crude-form, are still declined like the 6th Dec.; as sus, a pig [crude-form perhaps sv(e)]; G. suis; D. sui; Ac. suem; V. sus; Ab. sue, &c. So also bos, an ox; bo(v), G. bovis. G. plur. boum; D. bobus or bubus.

Obs. 7. The Greek nouns of this declension are numerous; their peculiarity is seen in the Gen. and Dat. sing., and in the Acc. plur., which have the Greek affixes (ös, a, às). These forms are principally used by the poets; and Pan, Pan; aer, air; and ather, ether; are the only nouns which invariably have the Greek form of the Acc. sing. in prose.

Examples of Greek Nouns.


GENDER OF NOUNS.

The gender of nouns is determined in two ways,
I. By the meaning of words . . . General Rules.
II. By the form of words . . . . Particular Rules.

General Rules.

1. Masculine. Words denoting men and male beings, as also the names of rivers, months, and winds, are masculine.

Obs. Some names of rivers of the A—Dec. are used as feminines in poetry.

2. Feminine. Words denoting women and female beings, as also the names of most cities, countries, islands, and trees, are feminine.

Obs. 1. (a) The towns Croto, Frusino, Hippo, Narbo, Sulmo, are masculine; as also all plurals of the O—Dec.; as Vei, Delphi.
(b) The towns Argos, Anxur, Tibur, are neuter; as also those which have the neuter form of the O—Dec., whether singular or plural; as Tusculum, Leuctra. Italian towns in (e) are feminine, or neuter; as, Præneste.

Obs. 2. The names of countries and islands which have the neuter form of the O—Dec., whether singular or plural, are neuter; as, Latium, Bactra; Sminthium, Cythéra.

Obs. 3. (a) The trees oleaster, wild olive; and pinaster, wild pine; are masculine; as also several smaller trees or plants of the O—Dec., as, spinus, thorn; caldæmus, reed.
(b) The names of trees and plants ending in or, of the consonant Dec., are mostly neuter; as, acer, maple; siler, osier; papâner poppy. Robur, oak-wood; buxum, box-wood; and thoric, frankincense, &c., are neuter, but are not really the names of trees.

3. Common. Words denoting an office or condition, which may belong either to men or women; and many names of animals are common in their gender.

Obs. 1. (a) Some names of animals are epicene, having only one gender for both sexes: as, passer (m), a sparrow; vulpes (f), a fox. The Gender of such nouns is determined by their form or declension.
Gender of Nouns.

(6) Some names of animals are doubtful in their gender; being used either as masculine or feminine, without any distinction; as, *anguis*, snake; *tala*, mole.

Obs. 2. The gender of all the nouns above-mentioned, may be considered as depending upon a substantive understood, which marks the class to which they belong; as, *vir*, man; *fluvius*, river; *mensis*, month; *ventus*, wind; or *femina*, woman; *urbs*, city; *terra*, land; *insula*, island; *arbor*, tree.

4. Neuter. All undeclined nouns are neuter.

5. Greek. Greek nouns generally retain the gender which they had in Greek.

Particular Rules.

N.B. The Particular Rules never interfere with the general ones; but apply only to those words whose gender is not determined by their meaning.

First Declension.

Nouns of the first declension are feminine.

Second Declension.

Nouns of the second declension are feminine.

Obs. 1. Dies, day, is doubtful in the sing., masculine in the plur.; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine.

Obs. 2. Nouns in *es*, belonging to the E— and I— Dec. are feminine; as *nubes*, a cloud.

Third Declension.

Nouns ending in *er* are masculine.
Nouns ending in *is* are often feminine.
Nouns ending in *e*, *ar*, and *al*, are neuter.

Obs. 1. Many nouns in *is* are masculine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>aqualis</em></td>
<td>ewer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>axis</em></td>
<td>axle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>callis</em></td>
<td>path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cassis</em></td>
<td>net.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>caulis</em></td>
<td>stalk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>collis</em></td>
<td>hill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>crinis</em></td>
<td>hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ensus</em></td>
<td>sword.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fascis</em></td>
<td>bundle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>follis</em></td>
<td>bellows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>funis</em></td>
<td>rope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>justis</em></td>
<td>club.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ignis</em></td>
<td>fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lienis</em></td>
<td>spleen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mensis</em></td>
<td>month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>natalis</em></td>
<td>birthday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>orbis</em></td>
<td>globe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>panis</em></td>
<td>bread.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>piscis</em></td>
<td>fish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>positis</em></td>
<td>post.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sentis</em></td>
<td>thorn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>torris</em></td>
<td>firebrand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vermis</em></td>
<td>worm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vectis</em></td>
<td>lever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>unguis</em></td>
<td>nail.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
They may be remembered in the following lines:—

\[\text{Lienis, aqualis,} \]
\[\text{Callis, caulis, collis, follis, mensis, et ensis,} \]
\[\text{Orbis, fustis, funis, panis, crinis, et ignis,} \]
\[\text{Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, et unguis,} \]
\[\text{Et vermis, vectis, postis, natalis, et axis.} \]

\[\text{Obs. 2. The following nouns are doubtful.} \]
\[\text{amnis river. corbis basket. finis end.} \]
\[\text{canalís channel. ciunis buttock. torquis collar.} \]

\text{FOURTH DECLENSION.}

\text{Nouns ending in} \text{us and er are masculine.} 
\text{Nouns ending in} \text{um and on are neuter.}

\[\text{Obs. 1. Albus, belly; colus, distaff; humus, ground; and vanus, fan; are feminine. As also many Greek nouns; as, papyrus, &c.} \]
\[\text{Obs. 2. Pampinus, vine-leaf; grossus, a fig; phaselus, pinnace; are doubtful.} \]
\[\text{Obs. 3. Virus, poison; pelagus, sea; are neuter: vulgus, common-people, is neuter and masculine.} \]

\text{FIFTH DECLENSION.}

\text{Nouns ending in} \text{us are masculine.} 
\text{Nouns ending in} \text{u are neuter.}

\[\text{Obs. 1. Acus, needle; domus, house; idus (pl.), ides; manus, hand; porticus, porch; quinquatrus (pl.), feast of Minerva; tribus, tribe; are feminine.} \]
\[\text{Obs. 2. Penus, provisions, is doubtful; and specus, a cave, has all three genders.} \]

\text{SIXTH DECLENSION.}

\text{1. Nouns are masculine when the crude-form ends in} \]
\[\text{(ic) Nom. ex, or ix; as, vertex, top, verticis; calix, cup, calicis.} \]
\[\text{Exceptions. Natrix, water-snake, and cocendis, hip,} \]
\[\text{are feminine; and cortex, bark; culex, gnat; imbrex, tile; obex, bolt; pumex, pumice-stone; silex, flint; are doubtful.} \]
\[\text{(ôn) “ o, (not being verbal nouns in io); as sermo, dis-} \]
\[\text{course, sermonis.} \]
\[\text{(ôr) “ or, (or os); as, amor, love, amoris; honor or honos,} \]
\[\text{honour, honiris.} \]
GENDER OF NOUNS.

(İł) Nom. es; as, fomes, fuel, fomitis. But merges, sheaf, is feminine.

(Ent) ens; as, torrens, torrent, torrentis. But rudens, cable, is doubtful.

Obs. Some nouns in ens are really adjectives, and take their gender from a substantive understood. Thus bidens, a sheep, is feminine, to agree with ovis.

2. Nouns are feminine, when the crude-form ends in

(IC) Nom. ix; as, cervix, neck, cervix.

(D) as, ex, is, us; as, lampas, lamp, lampadis; merces, reward, mercédís; cuspis, point, cuspidís; incus, anvil, incudís. But lapis, stone, lapidís, is masculine.

(IN) o; as, dulcedo, sweetness, dulcedinis. But ordo, order; turbo, whirlwind; are masculine: cardo, hinge; margo, margin; are doubtful.

(Ion) io (being verbal nouns); as, actio, action, actionis.

(T) preceded by a long vowel: Nom. as, ex, us; as, cetas, age, cētāsis; quies, rest, quiētis; virtus, virtue, virtūsis.

3. Nouns are neuter when the crude-form ends in

(MIN) Nom. men; as, carmen, song, carminis.

(R) preceded by a short vowel: Nom. ar, er, or, ur, us; as, jubar, sunbeam, jubāris; cadēcer, carcass, cader; quōr, plain, quōris; ebur, ivory, ebōris; opus, work, opēris.

Exceptions. Agger, mound; asser, beam; carcer, prison; later, tile; passer, sparrow; coeper, evening; together with the Greek words ather and aer, are masculine. Arbor, tree, is feminine. Furfur, bran; turten, turtle; cultur, culture; are masculine. Lepus, hare, is masculine. Cinis, ashes, cineris; and pulvis, dust, pulvēris; are doubtful.

Some particular words need to be remarked.

1. Sanguis, sanguinis, blood; pollis, pollinis, meal; pecten, pectinis, comb; and paries, parētēs, wall; are masculine: as also are the compounds of as, pound, and uncia, ounce; as quadrans, quadrantis, quarter; quinuncis, quinuncis, five ounces.

2. Cohors, cohortis, cohort; fornax, fornācis, furnace; hyems, hyemis, winter; supellex, supellectilis, furniture; seges, segētis, corn; tegēs, tegētis, cover; are feminine.

3. Caput, capitis, head; and aloc, alēcis, pickle; are neuter.

4. Adeps, adēpis, fat; and forceps, forēpis, pincers; are doubtful.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns, whose crude-form ends in (d), are feminine, like the Latin ones; as lampas.

2. Greek nouns, whose crude-form ends in (ār), Nom. sing. in a, are neuter; as poema, poemātis, poem.

3. Other Greek nouns of this declension are masculine; as lebes, lebētis, cauldron.

Monosyllables.

1. Masculine.

sol, sun. glis, dormouse. fons, fountain. flos, flower.
ren, kidney. pes, foot. mons, mountain. mos, custom.
splen, spleen. dens, tooth. pons, bridge. rus, dew.

Sal, salt, is mas. and neut. in the sing. and mas. in the plur.
Calx, heel; scrobs, ditch; stirps, trunk; are doubtful.

2. Neuter.

lac, milk. ver, spring. os (ossis), bone. pus, venom.
fel, gall. cor, heart. os (oris), mouth. rus, country.
mel, honey. vas, vessel. crus, leg. thus, frankin-
far, corn. as, brass. jusc, right. [cense.

3. All other monosyllables are feminine.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

1. Irregular Nouns are called Heteroclitæ.

2. Heteroclitæ are of three kinds; Variants, Redundants, Defectives.

I. VARIANTS.

1. Variants vary their gender, declension, or meaning, in different numbers.

1. Variant in Gender.

1. Masculine in the singular, neuter in the plural:—

Dindýmus, Ismârus, Mâmâlus, Tartârus, Massicus, Pangius, Tênârus, Tajyjétus, Avernus.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

2. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:—
carbăsus, linen; Peryámus.

3. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural:—
Argos; cælum, heaven; Elysium; clathrum, bar; porrum, leek.

2. Variant in Declension.

1. Delicium, delight; epūlum, feast; eruvium, spoil; induvium, garment; balneum, bath; belong to the O—Dec. in the singular, and to the A—Dec. in the plural. Balneum rarely makes balnea in the plural.

2. Vas, vasis, vessel; plur. vasa, vasorum, belongs to the consonant Dec. in the singular, and to the O—Dec. in the plural.

3. Vis, force, belongs to the I—Dec. in the singular, and to the consonant Dec. in the plural, in which it makes vires.

3. Variant in meaning.

Sing. Plur.
ædes, a temple. ædes, a house.
auxiliulum, help. auxilia, auxiliary troops.
castrum, a fort. castra, a camp.
comitium, place of assembly. comitia, assembly itself.
copia, abundance. copiae, troops.
facilitas, power of acting. facultates, property.
littera, letter (of the alphabet). litera, an epistle.
(oaps) opis, help. opes, power.
sal, salt. sales, witticisms.

And some others.

II. REDUNDANTS.

Redundants have for the same word two terminations of different genders or declensions, in all or some of its cases.

1. Redundant throughout the Cases.

alimonia, alimonium, food. elephantus, elephas, elephant.
buccina, buccinum, horn. esséda, essedum, chariot.
cingüla, cingulum, belt. consoriiio, consorium, society.
bacillus, baculum, stick. menda, mendum, spot.
 crater, crátera, bowl. acclivis, acclivus, sloping.
colus, -i, colus, -ús, distaff. imbecillis, imbecillus, weak.

And some others.

2. Redundant in some Cases.

Chremes, Dares, Laches, Thales, are declined with is and etis in the genitive.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Calchas has æ and antis, &c.
Bootæs, Euphrætæs, Orestes, have both æ and is.
Requies, rest, has ei and etis.
Domus, house; and laurus, laurel; are thus declined:—


Ficus, fig-tree; pinus, pine; cupressus, cypress; are declined like laurus.

Jugérum is of the O—Dec., but has also a Gen. and Abl. in both numbers of the consonant Dec.; thus, jugeris, jugere; jugerum, jugeribus.

3. Redundant in the Plural.

1. Masculine in the sing., Mas. and Neut. in the plur., sibilus, hiss; jocus, jest; locus, place.
2. Feminine in the sing., Fem. and Neut. in the plur., ostrea, oyster; margarita, pearl.
3. Neuter in the sing., Neut. and Mas. in the plur., fœnum, bit; rastrum, harrow; filum, thread; capistrum, halter.

III. DEFECTIVES.

Defectives are deficient in Number, or in Case.

1. Defective in Number.

1. Nouns which have no plural are,—

(a) The names of qualities or abstract ideas: as, justitia, justice; pietas, piety; fames, hunger.
(b) Nouns denoting a substance or mass: as, aurum, gold; argilla, clay; sanguis, blood.
(c) Collective nouns: as, plebs, the people; vulgus, the vulgar.
(d) Also some common nouns: as,
aer, air. lethum, death. pontus, sea.
aëther, ether. meridies, midday. specimen, model.
diluculum, dawn. nemo, no man. ver, spring.
jubær, sunbeam. pelægus, sea. venia, pardon.
justitium, suspension of business. And some others.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

2. Nouns which have no singular.

1. Masculines.

antes, rows. libéri, children. penátēs, household gods.
cancelli, lattice. manes, ghost. primores, chiefs.
fasti, annals. majores, ancestors. procēres, nobles.
lemūres, spectres. minores, posterity.

Several names of towns; as Philippi, &c.

2. Feminines.

argutiae, subtilties. induciā, truce. nūndinās, market-day.
calendae, calends. inferiā, offering to the dead. reliquiā, remains.
divitiā, riches. insidiā, snare. scala, stairs.
excubia, watch. minās, threats. scopā, broom.
facetiae, wit. nonae, nones. tenebraw, darkness.
feriae, holiday. nugas, trifles. valvaw, folding-doors.
idus, ides. nuptiaw, marriage.

Several names of towns; as Athenae, &c.


arma, arms. maniā, walls. scrutaw, wares.
cunabula, cradle. mapalwaw, huts. sponsalwaw, espousals.
exta, entrails. munia, offices. visceraw, entrails.
ilia, flank. praecordia, heart.

Several names of festivals and towns; as Saturnalia, Bactra, &c.

2. Defective in Case.

1. Aptots, or undecinable nouns; having the same termination for all the cases. Some foreign words; as, manna, Baal.
All cardinal numbers from 4 to 100.
Several Greek words; as, Tempe, (pl.)
Also cepē, onion; gummi, gum; frugi, thrifty; mane, morning; nequam, wicked; tot, so many; quot, how many.
Mille, thousand; cornu, horn; genu, knee; are aptots only in the singular.
Fas, right; instar, likeness; nihil, nothing; are properly used only in the Nom. Acc. and Voc.

2. Monoptots.—Nouns with only one case.

Sing. Nom. espes, hopeless; potis, able, &c.
Gen. nauci, nutshell.
Dat. ostentui, show; despicatui, contempt.
Abl. astu, craft; iussu, command; natu, birth; noctu, night, &c.

Plur. Acc. infecias, denial.
Abl. ingratii, against one’s will, &c.

Ambāge, winding; casse, net; coleite, inhabitant of heaven; annāli, record; fuce, jaw; have only the Abl. sing., but are perfect in the plur.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

3. Diptots.—Nouns with only two cases.

fors, forte, chance.
compleus, complede, better.
impetus, impete, attack.
juguris, jugere, acre.

Compedia, jugeris, and verberis, are perfect in the plur.

4. Triptots.—Nouns with only three cases.

G. feminis, D. femini, Ab. femine, thigh.
N. lues, Ac. lueum, Ab. lue, plague.
N. plus, G. pluris, Ab. plure, more. (Plur. perfect.)
D. preci, Ac. precem, Ab. prece, prayer. (Plur. perfect.)
N. situs, Ac. situm, Ab. situ, filth.
N. vespere, Ac. vespere, Ab. vespere or -i, evening.

Ebur, ivory ; far, corn ; fel, gall ; hymen, winter ; mel, honey ;
metus, fear ; rus, country ; solium, throne ; spes, hope ; thus, frank-
incense ; and some others, have only the Nom. Acc. and Voc. in
the plur.

5. Tetraptots.—Nouns with only four cases.

Dictionis, dominion ; frugis, fruit ; opis, help ; vicis, turn ;
want the Nom. and Voc. sing. Vis, force, is scarcely
found in the Gen. or Dat. sing.

6. Pentaptots.—Nouns with only five cases.

Os, mouth ; far, torch ; sol, sun ; pax, peace ; and several
others, have no Gen. plur.

N. B. Many of these defectives, especially those which are said to
want only one or two cases, have been called defectives, merely
because their cases do not happen to be found in the remains of
the classical writers which have come down to us.

CLASSES OF SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Many substantives have particular terminations
attached to particular meanings ; and these termina-
tions do not depend upon the casual affixes, but make
a part of the crude-form of the noun.

2. Such words may therefore be classed together
according to their terminations or Nominal affixes:
just as nouns of the same case might be classed together, according to their casual affixes.

3. The same may be observed with Adjectives, Verbs, &c.

**Substantives.**

I. Persons.

1. A male agent, or doer.

- **tor** (tōr); as, vic-tor, conqueror; jani-tor, doorkeeper.

   Formed like the supine of a corresponding Verb, and have s instead of t when the supine has; as **tondeo**, I shear, **tonsum**, **ton-sor**, a barber. Yet neither these, nor any other substantives which take the form of the supine, have any necessary connexion with verbs; as may be seen in jani-tor, from janua, a door; pra-tor, a ruler, from pra, before.

2. A female agent.

- **trix** (trīx); as, vic-trix, jani-trix.

   Formed like the masculine; but when the mas. ends in sor, the fem. retains the s; as **ton-sor**, **ton-trix**.

   A few agents have -ter(m), -tra (f); and ius or -io (m), -ia (f); as, magis-ter, master, magis-tra; lud-ius, or lud-io, a player, lud-ia.

3. One who is in a state denoted by the Root.

- **sul** (sūl); as, con-sul, one who is with another in office; exul, one who is out of his country.

II. Things.

1. The thing done, or passive object.

- **tum** (tó); as, cogo-tum, a thought; dic-tum, a saying (the thing said).

   Formed like the supine.

2. The thing which exhibits the action of the Root, whether actively or passively.

- **mentum** (mento); as, adju-mentum, a help (that which helps); frag-mentum, a fragment (that which has been broken).

- **men** (mīn); as, teg-men, a covering (that which covers); ag-men, a marching army (that which is led forward).
Sometimes u or i is used as a connecting vowel; as tegūmen.

3. That which acts the part of, or is like, the Root.
   -āgo (āgīn); as, in-ago, image (which imitates); vir-ago (one who acts the man, vir).
   -īgo (īgīn); as, vert-īgo, giddiness (which is like turning round and round, verto).
   -ūgo (ūgīn); as, lan-ūgo, down (soft hair like wool, lana).

4. The instrument by which anything is done.
   -trum (-tro); as, ara-trum, a plough (from aro).
   Sometimes the passive object; as, spectum, a thing seen.
   -ūlum (-ulo); as, vinc-ūlum, a bond (from vincio).
   Obs. For other terminations, denoting an instrument, see the next head.

III. Places.

1. The place where an agent acts.
   -torium (torio); as dormi-torium, a sleeping-room.
   Formed from the agent by adding ium; thus, dormi-tor, dormitorium; and are really neuter adjectives.
   -trīna (trīna); as tons-trina, a barber's shop.
   Not always formed from the agent, as la-trina, a wash-house (from laev); some end in -ina, as sod-inas, a mine (from sodio, I dig). Some of these words do not mean a place, as doc-trina, learning.

2. The place appropriated to any particular object.
   -etum (eto); as querc-etum, an oak-grove; vin-etum, a vineyard.
   -arium (ario); as virid-arium, a greenhouse; viol-arium, violet bed.
   These words generally mean the place where something grows.
   Words in arium do not always mean a place; sometimes stipendium, pay, or tempus, time, is to be supplied; as cloac-arium, scavenger's pay; annivers-arium, anniversary.
   -ile ( ili); as ov-ile, sheepfold; sēn-ile, hayloft.

3. (a) The place of an action; or (b) the action itself.
   -ium (io); as (a) comit-ium, place of assembling (from cum, co).
   (b) gaud-ium, joy; arbitr-ium, a decision;
4. (a) The place of an action; or (b) the instrument, or means.

-brum (bro); as, (a) delu-brum, shrine; (place for purification, deluo).
   (b) flx-brum, blast (means of blowing, flo).
-bræ (bra); as, (a) late-bra, hiding-place (from lateo).
   (b) tere-bra, a gimlet (from repere, I pierce).
-bulum (bulo); as, (a) sta-bulum, a stall (where cattle stand, sto).
   (b) pa-bulum, fodder (for feeding cattle, pasco).
-orum (cro); as, (a) lava-orum, a bath (from lavo).
   (b) ful-orum, a prop (from fulcio).
-culum (culo); as, (a) cena-culum, a supper-room (from cena).
   (b) oper-culum, a cover (from operio).

IV. Abstract Words.

1. An action, the act of doing.

-tio (tiōn); as, cuncta-tio, a delaying; lectio, a reading.
-tus (tu); as, audii-tus, a hearing; can-tus, singing.

   Formed like the supine, and take (s) instead of (t)
   when the supine does; thus, concursum, concursio;
   lusum, lusus.

   Some verbals in to do not take the form of the
   supine; and they generally have a passive meaning, as regio, a country ruled over, from rego.

(b) The act, or the thing done, varying between the two meanings.

-tūra (tūra); as, pictura, painting, or a picture.

   Formed like the supine, as (metior, mensum) mensura, measure.

   Some of these words denote a state; as dicta-tura, dictatorship.

-ela (ela); as, quer-ela, complaining, or a complaint.

2. A quality.

-ia (ia); as, audac-ia, boldness (from audax).
-ies (ie); as, minut-ies, minuteness (minutus).
-itia (itia); as, just-itia, justice (justus).
-ities (itiē); as, moll-ities, softness (mollis).
-itudo (itudīn); as, multitudo, multitude (multus).
-itas (itāt); as, suav-itas, sweetness (suavis).

Words of this class are formed from adjectives.

Consuetudo, custom, and mansuetudo, gentleness,
have a shortened affix.
Some words in *tas* omit the connecting vowel; as, *pauper-tas*, poverty: the connecting (i) is changed into ē, when the adjective ends in ius; as, *pius, pi-etas*; and adjectives in *stus* take (as) only, instead of *itas*; thus, *honestus, honestas*.

A few end in ēdo and ido, and are not formed from adjectives; as *frig-edo*, cold; *cup-ido*, desire.

3. A state.—(a) A state, or *feeling*.

-or (ōr); as, *am-or*, love; *tim-or*, fear.

The *or* is generally added to the simple root.

(b) A state or condition.

-*monium* (monio); as, *matri-monium*, matrimony.

Words in monia, seem rather to mean an act or *feeling*; as, *parsi-monia*, parsimony; *quere-monia*, complaint.

(c) A state or office.

-*ātus* (atu); as, *consul-ātus*, consulship (consul).

-*ium* (io); as, *sacerdōt-ium*, priesthood (sacerdos).

Formed from other nouns, and sometimes signifying a collection; as, *senatus* (assembly of old men, senes); *convivium* (assemblage of guests, convivæ).

N.B. The student may profitably amuse himself in making out lists of these terminations; and in investigating others for himself.

**Diminutives.**

Diminutives are formed from other nouns, and end in

- *-ulus -a -um*. When the crude-form of the Primitive ends in *(a)* or *(o)*; as, *puer, boy, (puero), puer-ulus; ara, altar, (ara), ar-ulā; scutum, shield, (scuto), scut-ulum.*

When a vowel precedes, the older form *ulus* is retained; as, *filius, fili-ulus.*

- *-culus -a -um*. When the crude-form of the Primitive does not end in *(a)* or *(o)*; as, *piscis, fish, (pisci), pisci-culus; mulier, woman, mulier-cula; cor, heart, cor-culum.*

For the sake of Euphony, the termination *ulus* is sometimes used instead of *culus*; as, *sacerdōs, priest, sacerdot-ulus.*
ADJECTIVES.

Obs. 1. Diminutives end in -us -a -um, according to their gender.

Obs. 2. Diminutives are sometimes contracted; as, puer, (puer-
ula) puella; liber, book, (liberulus) libellus: and from the con-
tracted form a second class of diminutives arises; as, libellus,
livelulus.

Obs. 3. Diminutives may be formed from adjectives, and even
from adverbs; as, miser, wretched, misellus; melius, better, melius-
culus, rather better.

A few diminutives end in
-aster (astro); as, poeta, poet, poet-aster.
-stra (stra); as, filia, daughter, fili-stra.
-cio (cion); as, homo, man, homun-cio.
-uleus (uleo); as, equus, horse, equ-uleus.
-xillus (xillo); as, paulus, little, pauci-xillus.
-xilla (xilla); as, mala, cheek, maxilla.

Patronymics.

Patronymics are names formed from the name of a father, or
ancestor. They are all of Greek formation: as, Pelides, Achilles,
the son of Peleus.

ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives denote the qualities of things, and
are joined to substantives to express their nature or
character: as, bonus puer, a good boy; malus puer, a
bad boy.

2. Adjectives take the form and declension of
substantives.

3. Some adjectives have three terminations, one
for each gender: as,

    M.         F.         N.

    Bonus,     bona,      bonum,   good.

4. Some have two terminations; one for the mas-
culine and feminine, and the other for the neuter: as,

    M.&F.        N.

    Tristis,    triste,    sad.
5. Some have only one termination (in most of their cases) for all genders: as *felix*, happy.

I. Adjectives of three terminations.

In Adjectives of three terminations the crude-forms of the *Mas.* and *Neut.* always end in (o), and that of the *Fem.* in (a). Thus they are declined like substantives of the O—, and A—, Dec.

1st Termination —us; as, *bonus*, good; (bono, bona).

Sing. M.  F.  N.  Plur. M.  F.  N.
N. bonus, bona, bonum. boni, bona, bona.
G. boni, bona, bonum. bonorum, -arum, -orum.
D. bono, bona, bono. bonis, — —
Ac. bonum, bonam, bonum. bonos, bonas, bona.
V. bone, bona, bonum. boni, bona, bona.
Ab. bono, bonâ, bono. bonis, — —

In the same way all Participles in *us* are declined; as, *amatus*, -a, -um, loved.

2nd Termination —er; as, *tener*, tender; (tenero, tenera).

Nom. tener, tenera, tenerum.
Gen. teneri, teneræ, teneri, &c.

Obs. Some adjectives in *er* omit the (e) before *r* in declining; as,
Nom. ager, agra, agrum, sick.
Gen. agrir, agrae, agrir.

Several adjectives in *us*, and *er*, have the Gen. in *ius*, and contract the Dat. into *i*; as,
Nom. totus, tota, totum.
Gen. totius, — —
Dat. toti, — —
Acc. totum, totam, totum.
Voc. tote, tota, totum.
Abl. totō, totā, totō, &c.

Obs. Like *totus* are declined *alius*, another (neut. *alius*); *alter*, the other; *uter*, one of two; *neuter*, neither; *solus*, alone; *ullus*, any one; *nullus*, none; * unus*, one.
ADJECTIVES.

3rd Termination — o ; as, ambo, both ; (ambo, amba).

| Plur. Nom. | ambo, | ambæ, | ambo. |
| Gen. | amborum, | ambarum, | amborum. |
| Dat. | ambobus, | ambabus, | ambobus. |
| Acc. | ambos, | ambas, | ambo. |
| Voc. | ambo, | ambæ, | ambo. |
| Abl. | ambobus, | ambabus, | ambobus. |

In the same way duo, two, is declined.

II. Adjectives of two Terminations.

1st Termination — is; crude-form in (i); as, tristis, sad, (tristi).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>Plur. M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>tristis,</td>
<td>triste.</td>
<td>tristes,</td>
<td>tristia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>tristis,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>tristium,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>tristi,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>tristibus,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>tristem,</td>
<td>triste.</td>
<td>tristes,</td>
<td>tristia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>tristis,</td>
<td>triste.</td>
<td>tristes,</td>
<td>tristia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>tristi,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>tristibus,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obs. 1. All adjectives in is, are of the I—Dec.; but they make em in the Acc., and i (never e) in the Abl. sing.

Obs. 2. Some adjectives in ris (crude-form ear) have also in the Nom. sing. another masculine form in (er). The Nom. in (is) is then mas. and fem., but generally used as fem. Such adjectives commonly omit the (e) before r, in declining; as, acer, acris, bold, (aceri).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>acer,</td>
<td>acris,</td>
<td>acre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>acris,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2nd Termination — or; crude-form in (or); as, melior, better, (melior).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>Plur. M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>melior,</td>
<td>melius.</td>
<td>meliores,</td>
<td>meliora.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>melioris,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>meliorum,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>meliori,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>melioribus,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>meliorem,</td>
<td>melius.</td>
<td>meliores,</td>
<td>meliora.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>melior,</td>
<td>melius.</td>
<td>meliores,</td>
<td>meliora.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>meliore (i),</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>melioribus,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES.

Obs. 1. These adjectives are all comparatives; they belong to
the consonant Dec.; but i is admissible in the Abl. sing. princi-
pally in poetry.

Obs. 2. Plus, pluris, more, is neuter only in the sing., but has
two terminations in the plur.

III. Adjectives of one Termination.

In Adjectives of one termination, the crude-form
generally ends in (i); but the Acc. always ends in em,
and e is mostly admissible in the Abl. sing. They
might therefore be considered as varying between the
I— and consonant Dec.

1st Termination — x; crude-form in (oti); as, felix, happy, (felici).

Sing. N. felix. Plur. felices, felicia.
   G. felicis. felicium, —
   D. felici. felicibus, —
   Ac. felicem, (neut.) felix. felices, felicia.
   V. felix. felices, felicia.
   Ab. felici (or ẹ). felicibus, —

2nd Termination — ns; crude-form in (nti); as,
ingens, vast, (ingenti).

   G. ingentis. G. ingentium.

Participles in ns, as, amans, loving; regens, ruling; are de-
clined in the same way; but generally prefer the Abl. sing. in
(e); as, amante, not amanti.

3rd Termination — r; crude-form in (ri); as, par,
equal, (pari).


Obs. Pauper, poor; puber, of age; degener, degenerate; ube8, ferte1e; memor, mindful; and cicur, tame; have a crude-form in
(e); though all, except pauper, admit of i in the Abl. sing.: thus,
memor; Ab. membre (i); plur. N. membres; G. membrum.
ADJECTIVES.

4th Termination —rs; crude-form in (rti); as, solers, careful, (solerti).


5th Termination —es; crude-form in (eti); as hebes, dull, (hebēti).


Obs. Alex, winged; hospez, hospitable; sopez, safe; have a crude-form in (η), and make only (ε) in the Abl. sing.: thus, sopex, Ab. sopez; Plur. N. sopezes; G. sopezium. Dieses, rich, (dēvitē), makes in Plur. Nom. Divites, divia; Gen. divitiēm.

N.B. A few adjectives, such as vetus, veteris, old, and oculēs, ocelēs, unmarried; are the only ones of their respective kinds, and must be learned by observation.

Compound Adjectives.

The terminations of Compound Adjectives depend upon the words from which they are derived. The following may be noticed.

1. Compounds ending in ceps (from caput, head), and in rs, have a crude-form in (i), which they show in the Abl. sing. (together with e), and in the Nom. (neuter) and Gen. plur.; as, consors, united; Abl. consorti (e); Plur. N. consortia; G. consortium.

2. Compounds ending in cepe (from capio, I take); fæx, (from facio, I make); color (colour); and ope (help); have (with e) in the Abl. sing., but nowhere else; as inope, destitute; Ab. inōpi (e); Plur. N. inopes; G. inopum.

3. Compounds ending in pes (foot); pos (from potis, able); corpor (from corpus, body); and stes (from sto, I stand); have a crude-form altogether ending in a consonant; as, bipes, having two feet; Ab. bipēde; Plur. N. bipedes; G. bipedum.

N.B. Adjectives of one termination have no neuter plural, unless their crude-form ends in (i). Vetus, (veteris), Neut. Plur. vetera, is the only exception.

Comparison of Adjectives.

1. Adjectives have two degrees of comparison, the Comparative and Superlative.

(a) The Comparative denotes that a quality is possessed by one
ADJECTIVES.

object in a greater or less degree than it is by another; as, doctior, more learned [than some one else].

(b) The Superlative denotes that a quality is possessed in the highest or lowest degree; as, doctissimus, most learned [of all the persons spoken of].

2. The adjective which expresses a quality without any comparison is sometimes called the Positive degree.

Formation.

1. The most usual formation is by adding —ior for the comparative.

—issimus for the superlative.

These affixes are added to the crude-form of the positive; but final vowels are dropped in the formation; as,

doctus, learned, (docto), doct-ior, doct-issimus.
solers, careful, (solerti), solert-ior, solert-issimus.

Obs. 1. When (r) is the last consonant of the positive, the superlative adds rimus; as, pauper, pauper-rimus; vetus, (veter), veter-rimus.

Obs. 2. Facilis, easy; similis, like; gracilis, slender; humilis, low; form the superlative by adding limus; as, facilis, facil-limus.

Obs. 3. Compound adjectives ending in dicus, ficus, and volus, take their comparative and superlative from forms in ens (entis); as maledicus, reviling, maledicientior, maledicientissimus.

Obs. 4. Adjectives ending in us, preceded by a vowel, generally make the comparative and superlative with magis, more, and maximè, most; as, pius, magis pius, maximè pius. Some other adjectives, especially compounds, form their comparison in the same way.

Irregular Comparison.

| bonus,   | good,    | melior,  | optimus. |
| malus,   | bad,     | pejor,   | pessimus. |
| magnus,  | great,   | major,   | maximus.  |
| parvus,  | small,   | minor,   | minimus.  |
| multus,  | much,    | plus,    | plurimus. |
| dives,   | rich, (divitior) ditior, | ditissimus. |
| internus,| inward,  | interior, | intimus.  |
| dexter,  | on the right, | dexterior, | dextimus. |
| sinister,| on the left, | sinisterior, | sinistimus. |
ADJECTIVES.

Double Superlative.

extērus, outward, exterior, extĭmus, and extrēmus.
externus,
infērus, low, inferior, infĭmus, and imus.
infernus,
supērus, high, superior, suprēmus, and summus.
supernus,
póstērus, hindward, posterior, postrēmus, and postūmus.

Obs. Infĭmus generally signifies the lowest thing of many; imus the lowest part of one thing; as, infĭmus mons, the lowest mountain; imus mons, the bottom of the mountain. Supremus and summus differ in the same way.

Defective Comparison.

1. No positive form; or no positive but an adverb:—

deterior, inferior,
ocior, quicker,
prior, former, before,
(citra) citerior, more on this side,
(ultra) ulterior, farther off, more beyond,
(propē) propior, nearer,
deterrimus.
ocissimus.
primus.
citimus.
ultimus.
proximus.

2. No comparative:—

bellus, pretty,
fidus, faithful,
nupĕrus, late,
sacer, sacred,
novus, new,
vetus, old,
bellissimus.
fidissimus.
nuperrimus.
sacerrimus.
novissimus.
veterrimus.

And some others.

3. No superlative:—

juvenis, young, junior, contracted from juvenior.
senex, old,
ingens, vast,
pronus, prone,

4. No positive or superlative:—

Satior, better; anterior, before; sequior, inferior.
NUMERALS.

Numerals are divided into

1. Cardinal (Numbers which answer to the question)
   2. Ordinal
   3. Distributive
   4. Multiplicative
   5. Proportional
   6. Adverbial

   In what rank or order?
   How many to each?
   How many fold?
   How many times more?
   How many times?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Roman</th>
<th>1. Cardinal</th>
<th>2. Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Unus, one</td>
<td>Primus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>duo,</td>
<td>secundus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>tres,</td>
<td>tertius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>quattuor,</td>
<td>quartus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>quinque,</td>
<td>quintus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>VI</td>
<td>sex,</td>
<td>sextus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>VII</td>
<td>septem,</td>
<td>septimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>octo,</td>
<td>octavius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IX</td>
<td>novem,</td>
<td>nonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem,</td>
<td>decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>XI</td>
<td>undecim,</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>XII</td>
<td>duodecim,</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>tredecim,</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>quattuordecim,</td>
<td>quartus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>XV</td>
<td>quindecim,</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>sedecim,</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>XVII</td>
<td>septendecim,</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
<td>duodeviginti,</td>
<td>octavus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>XIX</td>
<td>undeviginti,</td>
<td>nonus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>viginti,</td>
<td>vicesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>XXI</td>
<td>viginti unus, &amp;c.</td>
<td>vicesimus primus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>triginta,</td>
<td>tricesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>XL</td>
<td>quadraginta,</td>
<td>quadragesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>quinquaginta,</td>
<td>quinquagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>sexaginta,</td>
<td>sexagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>septuaginta,</td>
<td>septuagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>LXXX</td>
<td>octoginta,</td>
<td>octogesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>XC</td>
<td>nonaginta,</td>
<td>nonagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>centum,</td>
<td>centesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>ducenti, -a, -a,</td>
<td>ducentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>trecenti,</td>
<td>trecentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>CCCC</td>
<td>quingenti,</td>
<td>quingenentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>D or IO</td>
<td>quingenti,</td>
<td>quingenentesimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERALS.

600, DC. sexcenti, sexcentesimus.
700, DCC. septingenti, septingentesimus.
800, DCCC. octingenti, octingentesimus.
900, DCCC. nongenti, nongentesimus.
1000, MM or CI. mille, millesimus.
2000, MM. duo millia, &c. bis millesimus, &c.
or bis mille.

Obs. 1. The cardinal numbers for 13, 16, 17, 18, and 19, may be used in a separated form; as, decem et tres, decem et sex, &c.; and in the compound numbers above 20, the smaller number may precede with et; as (21) unus et viginti.

Obs. 2. In the ordinal numbers, from 13 to 19, the smaller number may be placed last, and et inserted or not; as, 13th, decimus tertius, or decimus et tertius: duodevigintimus, and undevigintimus, are sometimes used for 18th and 19th. And in the compound numbers above 20, the smaller number may precede with et; as 21st, unus et vigintimus.

Obs. 3. Unus is declined like totus; duo like ambo; and tres like the plural of tristis. Other cardinal numbers up to 100, are undeclined.

3. Distributive Numbers.

1. singûlus, one each.
2. binus.
3. ternus, or trinus.
4. quaternus.
5. quinus.
6. sexus.
7. septenus.
8. octiûnus.
9. novenus.
10. denus.
11. undenus.
12. duodenus.
13. ternus denus, &c.
20. vicenus.
21. vicenus singulus.
30. tricenus.
40. quadragenus.
100. centenus.

4. Multiplicative Numbers.

1. simplex, single.
2. duplex, double.
3. triplex, triple.
4. quadruplex.
5. quintuplex.
7. septemplex, &c.

5. Proportional Numbers.

1. simples, equal.
2. duplus, twice as much.
3. triplus, thrice as much.
4. quadruplus.
5. quintuplus.
6. sextuplus.

Obs. 1. The difference between the multiplicative and proportional numbers is, that proportionals imply a comparison of one thing with another, but multiplicatives do not. The proportionals are generally used in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. The first syllable in singulus, simplex, simplus, and semel; seen also in similis, simul, &c.; corresponds with the Greek ἁμα, ἀκλούς, ὁμαλός, ὁμοῦ, and signifies “uniformity,” and thence “singleness.” The affixes plex, and plus, may be compared
respectively with the Greek forms πλαξ, a surface (whence διπλαξ, double, &c.; and from the same root the Latin pliço, I fold), and πολύς—root ΠΟΛ or ΠΑΟ, fulness, (whence διπλός, &c.); duplex therefore is "having a double surface;" duplus, "twice full."

6. Adverbial Numbers.

1. semel, once. 7. septies. 13. tredecies, &c.
2. bis, twice. 8. octies. 17. decies et septies, &c.
3. ter, thrice. 9. novies. 20. vicies.
4. quater, four times. 10. decies. 21. semel et vicies, &c.
5. quinquies. 11. undecies. 30. tricies, &c.
6. sexies. 12. duodecies. 100. centies.

CLASSES OF ADJECTIVES.

I. Verbal Adjectives—(a) (with an active sense).

1. Doing some act, or being in a state.
   -ens (enti); as, viol-ens, violent (in acting).
   Present Participles in the active voice, are all adjectives of this kind. Many participles have almost lost their verbal connection; as, prudens, prudent (pro-vido); sapiens, wise (sapi); and some adjectives have this participial meaning, without belonging to any verb.

2. Able and willing to do (as an agent).
   -ax (açi); as, vor-ax, voracious (voró); aud-ax, bold (audœo).
   -ulus (ulo); as, garr-ulus, talkative (garrío); quer-ulus, querulous (queror).
   These two terminations mean nearly the same; but words in ax imply more energy, and voluntary action.

3. Apt or ready to do.
   -cus (uco); as, cad-ucus, frail, ready to fall (cado).
   Some words in -cus have nearly a similar meaning; as, cad-ivus, act-ivus.

4. Abounding in, or doing what the verb denotes profusely.
   -bundus (bundo); as, fluctua-bundus, full of wavings; lacrima-bundus, weeping profusely. The termination
ADJECTIVES. 49

is preceded by (a), when the kindred verb is of the A—conjugation; otherwise by (e) or (i); as, tremo-bundus, pudi-bundus.

5. Having a nature, or faculty (a permanent quality).

-undus (cundo); as, ira-undus, passionate (having an angry nature, irascor); sa-undus, eloquent (having a faculty of speaking, for).

(b) With a passive sense.

1. One who has been acted upon, or brought into a state.

-tus (to); as, aurū-tus, gilded; crini-tus, long-haired.
Past Participles in the passive voice, are all adjectives of this kind; and adjectives of this kind are all passive in their literal meaning, though they are not really connected with any verb, and may sometimes appear to be active when rendered into English. Thus crinitus, having long hair—i. e. one who has been supplied with hair.

2. Able to be done.

-bilis (bili)  (a) Formed generally from the crude-form of a corresponding verb; as, ama-bilis, amiable; dele-bilis, able to be blotted out. When the verb ends in a consonant, (i) is inserted as a connecting vowel; as, reg-ibilis, able to be ruled.

(b) Formed sometimes from the supine; as, video, I see, visum, vis-ibilis; flecto, I bend, flexum, flex-ibilis.

(c) Bilis is sometimes shortened to ilis; as, fac-ilis, easy; flex-ilis.

Obs. These adjectives are sometimes used in an active sense; as, penetra-bilis, penetrating; terr-ibilis, terrifying.

3. One that exhibits the action of the verb (either actively or passively).

-idus (ido); as, cup-idus, desirous (one who desires, cupio); rap-idus, rapid (one that is hurried along, rapio).

-idis (idi); as, vir-idis, green (from vireo).
Adjectives of this kind are chiefly connected with intransitive verbs, which causes them to express a state, rather than an action; as, calo, I am hot, calidus, &c.
N. B. The above are called verbal adjectives from the nature of their signification, and not because they are derived from verbs, which some of them evidently are not.

II. Adjectives derived from, or connected with substantives.

1. Of or belonging to the root. (Possessives.)

-ālis (Ali); as, natur-ālis, natural; reg-ālis, regal.
-illīs (lli); as, host-ilīs, hostile; vir-ilīs, manly.
-āris (ari); as, milit-āris, military; popul-āris, popular.
-ius (io); as, reg-ius, royal; patr-ius, of a father.
-ītius, -icius(itio); as, prop-ītius, favourable (of one who is near, prope); tribun-īcius, belonging to a tribune.
-uss (uo); as, ann-usus, annual; perspic-usus, clear.
-aneus (aneo); as, subit-aneus, sudden; extr-aneus, external.
-ārius (ario); as, subit-ārius, extr-ārius; applied generally to persons, and aneus to things. Words in -ārius, are sometimes used as substantives, vir, &c. being understood; as, armentarius, a herdsman.
-ivus (ivo); as, aest-ivus, of summer; tempest-ivus, seasonable.

2. Of or belonging to a place.

-ensis (ensis); as, Atheni-ensis, Athenian (Athenae).
-ānus (ano); as, Rom-anus, Roman (Roma).

These terminations are also used with common nouns; as, pratum, a meadow, prat-ensis; mons, a mountain, mont-ānus;

-īnus (ino); as, Aric-inus (from Aricia).
mostly used for towns of Greek origin; or names ending in ius -ia -ium.

-as (at); as, Arpin-as (from Arpinum);
mostly used for names ending in um.

-ius (io); as, Rhod-ius (from Rhodus, Rhodes).

-æus (æo); as, Smyrn-æus (from Smyrna).

The terminations ius and æus are for Greek words.

Obs. A few common nouns signifying places have -estis; as coel-estis, celestial; -ster, or -estris; as, palus-ster, camp-estris, belonging to a marsh—a field.

3. Like, or having a nature suited to a thing.

-ious (ico); as, am-ious, friendly (like one who loves).
-icus (ico); as, lyr-icus, lyrical (adapted to the lyre).
-tious (tico); as, aqua-tious, aquatic (suited to the water).
-tillīs (tilli); as, aqua-tillīs, aquatic.
Expressing the material or origin of a thing.

-ēus (EO); as, ferr-ēus, made of iron (ferrum).
-aceus (ACEO); as, chart-aceus, made of paper (charta).
-ēnus (ENO); as, terr-ēnus, earthy.
-īnus (INO); as, can-īnus, canine (derived from a dog).
-īnus (INO); as, cedr-īnus, made of cedar (cedrus).
-nus (NO); as, ilig-nus, oaken (from ilex); also frater-nus, mater-nus, &c., denoting origin.

The termination inus belongs mostly to animals; and inus to trees.

5. Denoting excess; hence used mostly in a bad sense.

-ōsus (oso); as, fam-ōsus, infamous; vin-ōsus, given to wine.
-olentus (OLENTO); as, vi-olentus, violent (from vis): sometimes u is the connecting vowel; as, pulcer-ulentus, dusty: sometimes shortened; as, cru-olentus, cruentus, bloody (from cruar).

6. In the time of.

-ernus (ERNO); as, hodi-ernus, of to-day; hest-ernus, yesterday.
-urnus (URNO); as, di-urnus, in the day-time; noct-urnus, in the night.

N.B. Other terminations might be added, which the student may profitably investigate for himself.

PRONOUNS.

1. Pronouns supply the place of substantives, and prevent their too frequent repetition in a sentence.


1. Personal Pronouns.

Ego, I; tu, thou; nos, we; vos, you; sui, of himself; ipse, self.
PRONOUNS.

SING.                           PLUR.
N.  ego.  tu.  nos.  vos.
G.  mei.  tui. nostrum, or (i). vestrum, or (i).
D.  mihi.  tibi. nobis.  vobis.
Ac.  me.  te.  nos.  vos.
V.  —   tu.  —   vos.
Ab.  me.  te.  nobis.  vobis.

Sui is the same for both numbers and all genders, and has no nominative.


To these pronouns the particle met may be added, to give them greater emphasis; as, egomet, I myself, mihiemet, temet, &c.

Ipse belongs to all persons; as, ego ipse, myself; tu ipse, thyself.

SING.                           PLUR.
M.  F.  N.  M.  F.  N.
N.  ipse,  ipsa,  ipsum.  ipsi,  ipsae,  ipsa.
G.  ipsius,  —  —  ipsorum,  ipsarum,  ipsorum.
D.  ipsi,  —  —  ipsis,  —  —
Ac.  ipsum,  ipsam,  ipsum.  ipsos,  ipsas,  ipsa.
V.  ipse,  ipsa,  ipsum.  ipsi,  ipsae,  ipsa.
Ab.  ipso,  ipsa,  ipso.  ipsis,  —  —

Obs. 1. The declension of the personal pronouns varies a little from that of substantives; for being words in constant use from the earliest period, they have in some cases retained older forms; and in others have been more liable to change, in order to suit the taste or caprice of pronunciation.

Obs. 2. The crude-form of the first personal pronoun was (m1); for which ego, from a different root, was substituted in the Nom. Hence

Gen.  mi-I,  i softened into e,  mei.
Dat.  mi-B1,  b softened into h,  mihi.
Acc.  mi-e(M),  the final m omitted,  me.
Abl.  mi-e,  contracted,  me.

Obs. 3. The crude-forms of tu and sui were (tu) or (ti), and (su) or (si). Hence as with ego.

Gen.  tu-I,  tui.  su-I,  sui.
Dat.  ti-B1,  tibi.  si-B1,  sibi.
Acc.  ti-e(M),  te.  si-e(M),  se.
Abl.  ti-e,  te.  si-e,  se.
PRONOUNS.

Obs. 4. The crude-forms of nos and vos were (no) and (vo). Hence

N. Ac. & V. no-ES, nōs. vo-ES, vōs.
Gen. no-RUM (irreg.), nostrum. vo-RUM (vostrum), vestrum.
Dat. no-BIS, nōbis. vo-BIS, vobis.

The irregular genitives nostrum, nostri, and vestrum, vestri, do not resemble the Gen. plur. of any other nouns. They seem to be in some way connected with the possessives noster and vester.

Obs. 5. Ipse was originally ipsus, crude-form (ipsō, ipsa); and is declined with the old form of the Gen. in ius.

2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

Hic, this; iste, that; ille, and is, that, or he. Hic, iste, ille, belong respectively to the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd person.

Hic denotes an object near, or connected with me—the speaker.
Iste, an object connected with you—the person spoken to.
Ille, an object connected with him—the person spoken of.
Ille and is are sometimes used as personal pronouns for the third person.

Sing. M. F. N. Plur. M. F. N.

N. hic, hæc, hoc. hi, hæ, hæc.
G. hujus, — — horum, harum, horum.
D. huic, — — his, — —
Ac. hanc, hanc, hoc. hos, has, hæc.
Ab. hoc, hæc, hoc. his, — —

N. ille, illa, illud. illi, illæ, illa.
G. illius, — — illorum, illarum, illorum.
D. illi, — — illis, — —
Ac. illum, illam, illud. illos, illas, illa.
Ab. illo, illa, illo. illis, — —

N. is, ea, id. ii, ea, ea.
G. ejus, — — eorum, earum, eorum.
D. ei, — — eis, or iis, — —
Ac. eum, eam, id. eos, eas, ea.
Ab. eo, ed, eo. eis, or iis, — —

Iste, ista, istud, is declined like ille.
Idem, eadem, idem (the same), like is.
PRONOUNS.

Obs. 1. The crude-form of *hic* is (*ho, ha*). The (*c*) added to some cases comes from the demonstrative particle *ce*, which was originally added to all the demonstratives except *is*, and which still remains in *hic* when the word is emphatic; as, *hicce, hujusce*, &c. *Hic* therefore is declined regularly.

Gen. *ho-IUS*, softened into *hujus*.
Dat. *ho-I-C*, — *huic*.
Acc. *ho-eM-c* (*hum-c*), for euphony, *hunc*; just as *tum*, or *tunc*.

Obs. 2. *ille* and *iste* were originally *illic*, *illæc*, *illo*, *istic*, *istæc*, *istoc*; and were declined like *hic*. Their crude-forms are (*illo*, *illa*; *isto*, *ista*).

Obs. 3. The crude-form of *is* is (*eo*, *ea*).

3. Relative Pronouns.

Qui, Who.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td><em>qui</em></td>
<td><em>qui</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td><em>que</em></td>
<td><em>que</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td><em>quod</em></td>
<td><em>quorum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td><em>cu jus</em></td>
<td><em>quorum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td><em>cui</em></td>
<td><em>quibus, or quies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td><em>quem</em>, <em>quam</em>, <em>quod</em></td>
<td><em>quos</em>, <em>quas</em>, <em>que</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td><em>quo</em>, <em>quâ</em>, <em>quo, or qut.</em></td>
<td><em>quibus, or quies</em>, —</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obs. The crude-form of *qui* is (*quo*, *qua*). Hence


*a* and *c* being both pronounced like *k*, and *j* like the English *y*, the change from *quoius* to *cu jus* is very slight.

Like *qui*, is declined the compound *quiunque*, whoever.

Some relatives have corresponding demonstrative forms, derived from the root (*r*) or (*to*). Thus,

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>tot</em>, <em>quot</em>,</td>
<td>so many, as.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>talis</em>, <em>qualis</em>,</td>
<td>of such a kind, as.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tantis</em>, <em>quantus</em>,</td>
<td>so great, as.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also with demonstrative and relative adverbs;

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>tam</em>, <em>quam</em>, so, as.</td>
<td><em>tum</em>, <em>quum</em>, then, when.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The relative forms may all be used as *interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many!

4. Interrogative Pronouns.

Quis, Who?

Sing. N. *quis*, *qua*, *quid*, or *quod*.

In the other cases like *qui*. 
Obs. Quis and qui are only two forms of the same word, a slight alteration having been introduced to distinguish the interrogative.

Quis is sometimes used indefinitely, and signifies "any one." And many compounds of quis have this meaning. The principal compounds of quis are

\begin{align*}
\text{aliquis,} & \quad \text{some one.} & \text{unusquisque,} & \quad \text{each one.} \\
\text{quisque,} & \quad \text{each.} & \text{guidam,} & \quad \text{a certain one.} \\
\text{quisquam,} & \quad \text{any one.} & \text{quivis,} & \quad \text{whom you please.} \\
\text{quispiam,} & \quad \text{any one.} & \text{quilibet,} & \quad \text{whom you please.} \\
\text{ecquis,} & \quad \text{any one!}
\end{align*}

All these are declined like quis, and make quid or quod in the neuter.

Quis (any one), together with aliquis and ecquis, generally used quâ, not quæ, for the Nom. sing. feminine, and plur. neuter.

Quisquis, whosoever, is thus declined:

\begin{align*}
\text{Sing. N. quisquis,} & \quad \text{— quicquid.} \\
\text{Ac. (quemquem, obsolete),} & \quad \text{— quicquid.} \\
\text{Ab. quoquo,} & \quad \text{quaquà,} & \text{quoquo.}
\end{align*}

5. Possessive Pronouns.

The possessive pronouns are mostly formed from the personal ones.

\begin{align*}
\text{ego, (crude-form mi),} & \quad \text{meus, -a, -um, my, mine.} \\
\text{tu,} & \quad \text{tuus,} & \quad \text{thy, thine.} \\
\text{sui,} & \quad \text{suus,} & \quad \text{his, his own.} \\
\text{nos,} & \quad \text{noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.} \\
\text{vos,} & \quad \text{(voster) vester,} & \quad \text{your, yours.}
\end{align*}

To these may be added

\begin{align*}
\text{cujus -a -um,} & \quad \text{whose! from quis.} \\
\text{nostas,} & \quad \text{(nostrâ), of our country.} \\
\text{vestras,} & \quad \text{(vestrâ), of your country.} \\
\text{cujas,} & \quad \text{(cujât), of what country.}
\end{align*}

6. Adjective Pronouns.

The Adjective Pronouns differ from the preceding in not implying possession.

\begin{align*}
\text{uter,} & \quad \text{utra,} & \quad \text{utrum,} & \quad \text{one of two.} \\
\text{alter,} & \quad \text{altera,} & \quad \text{alterum,} & \quad \text{the other.} \\
\text{alis,} & \quad \text{alia,} & \quad \text{aliud,} & \quad \text{another.} \\
\text{ullus,} & \quad \text{ulla,} & \quad \text{ullum,} & \quad \text{any.}
\end{align*}
Also the Compounds—

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two.
alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other.
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither.
nullus, nulla, nullum, none, &c.

These are all declined like totus, with ius in the Gen.

Obs. Alius makes Gen. alius, the i being always long, as contracted from ali-ius; but alter makes alterius, the i being always short.

VERBS.

1. A Verb denotes an action (of body or mind), or a state of being: as, amo, I love; patior, I suffer.

2. The person who performs the action, or exists in the state denoted by the verb, is called the Subject of the verb: as, ego amo, I love.

Obs. The subject of a verb may be represented as performing an action, or as acted upon by another object; and the action itself may be represented as performed under different circumstances, at different times, and by different persons. Verbs therefore have forms which serve to denote all these different modifications, and which are called Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

VOICES.

1. Verbs have two voices, the Active, as, amo, I love; and the Passive, as, amor, I am loved.

2. The Active voice denotes that the subject performs an action.

3. The Passive denotes that the subject is acted upon by another object.

4. Active verbs are either Transitive or Neuter.

5. A Transitive verb denotes that the subject acts upon another object: as, amo te, I love you.

6. A Neuter verb denotes that the subject does not act upon another object: as, ambulo, I walk.
7. Deponent verbs have a passive form with an active signification: as, loquor, I speak.

8. Neuter-passive verbs have an active form with a passive signification: as, vappulo, I am beaten.

MOODS.

Verbs have four moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive.

1. The Indicative speaks of an action as simply and actually occurring: as, amo, I love; amavi, I have loved.

2. The Subjunctive speaks of an action as dependent upon some other event or fact: as, tam crudelis erat ut omnes eum timèrent, he was so cruel that all feared him.

Obs. The Subjunctive is also used when an action is uncertain or contingent; as, oro ut reedax, I pray that he may return. It is then said to be used potentially, and is sometimes called the Potential Mood.

3. The Imperative speaks of an action as commanded or desired: as, ama, love thou.

4. The Infinitive speaks of an action without reference to the person performing it, but as subsisting by itself, like a substantive: as, amare, to love, or the loving.

Obs. The Infinitive, from the nature of its signification, is to be regarded rather as a verbal substantive than as a mood of the verb.

5. To verbs are attached, 1. Gerunds and Supines, which are verbal substantives: as, amandi, of loving; amatum, to love, or the loving. 2. Participles, which are verbal adjectives, and speak of an action as a quality belonging to a subject: as, amans, loving, i.e. a person who loves.

Obs. 1. Participles differ in meaning from adjectives, inasmuch as they describe a quality as existing only in a certain state; but adjectives generally denote a permanent quality. But many participles have by custom gained the meaning of adjectives.
TENSES.

1. In Latin verbs there are six tenses.

- **Present**, as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.
- **Imperfect**, — *amábam*, I was loving.
- **Future**, — *amábó*, I shall love, or be loving.
- **Perfect**, — *amávi*, I have loved, or I loved.
- **Pluperfect**, — *amavěram*, I had loved.
- **Future perfect**, — *amavěro*, I shall have loved.

2. The tenses describe (a) the time, and (b) state of an action.

(a) Time is either **present, past, or future**.

(b) In any one of these three times an action may be described as **going on, as finished, or as simply acted**, without noticing whether it is finished or going on.

3. These three different states of action may be called

- **Indefinite** (action neither going on, nor finished).
- **Imperfect** (action going on).
- **Perfect** (action finished).

4. Therefore of an action it may be said

- (Indefinite), it is acted, it was acted, it will be acted.
- (Imperfect), it is going on, it was going on, it will be going on.
- (Perfect), it is finished, it was finished, it will be finished.

5. All these nine modifications of action may be separately expressed in an English verb; thus,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indefinite</strong>, I love,</td>
<td>I loved,</td>
<td>I shall love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong>, I am loving,</td>
<td>I was loving,</td>
<td>I shall be loving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong>, I have loved,</td>
<td>I had loved,</td>
<td>I shall have loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. In Latin there are only six tenses, because there are no distinct forms for the *Indefinites*; thus,

- *amo*, is I love, or I am loving.
- *amavi*, is I loved, or I have loved.
- *amabo*, is I shall love, or I shall be loving.
N. B. The Perfect in the Latin verb describes two different times, as well as two different states of action; as, amavi, I have loved, to-day (Action finished in present time)—and amavi, I loved, yesterday (Action indefinite in past time). In the latter case, the Perfect may be called, the Perfect-aorist, or Perfect-indefinite.

7. The Indicative mood has all the six tenses.
8. The Subjunctive has no futures.
9. The Imperative has only the present tense.
10. The Infinitive has three tenses, Present, Perfect, Future.

These tenses in the infinitive mood; as well as the Participles, do not describe the time, but only the state of an action; thus,

(a) The Present describes the action as going on.
(b) The Perfect as finished.
(c) The Future as intended.

Obs. The gerunds and supines are declined with cases. The gerund has three cases, the Gen., Dat., or Abl., and Acc. The supine has two cases, the Acc. and Abl.

11. The Participles belong

(a) In the Active voice to the Present and Future tenses; as, amans, loving; amaturus, about to love.
(b) In the Passive voice to the Perfect and Future; as, amatus, having been loved; amandus, to be loved.
(c) Deponent verbs only have a Perfect participle with an Active signification; as, secutus, having followed.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

1. Each tense has two Numbers, Singular and Plural.
2. Each number contains three Persons, First, Second, and Third.
3. The First person denotes the speaker.
   The Second, the person spoken to.
   The Third, the person spoken of.
4. In English the persons are principally distin-
guished by the personal pronouns, I, thou, he, we, you, they.
5. In Latin the persons are distinguished by the endings of the verb.

THE FORMATION OF VERBS.

1. The formation of verbs resembles that of nouns.
2. There is in every verb a crude-form, which is found in every part of it.
3. To the crude-form of the verb, letters or syllables are added to produce the crude-forms of the different tenses.
4. To the crude-form of each tense letters or syllables are added to mark the different persons.
5. The letters or syllables which mark the tenses, are called Temporal Affixes.
6. The letters or syllables which mark the different persons, are called Personal Affixes.

Example.
The crude-form of régo, I rule, is . REG.
The temporal affix for the Imperfect is . EBA.
The personal affix for the 1st Pers. is . M.
Thus making reg-eba-m, regébam, I was ruling.

Obs. 1. Every Latin verb being formed in the manner here described is in reality a compound word, made up of a noun, contained in the crude-form; the particular force and meaning of the tense, contained in the temporal affix; and a pronoun, contained in the personal affix.

Obs. 2. The different personal affixes are all parts of personal pronouns; many of them not traceable in Latin, but derived from corresponding forms in the old Greek, or other kindred languages.

CONJUGATIONS.

The temporal and personal affixes are the same in all verbs; but a difference is produced by the manner in which the same affixes combine with the crude-forms of different verbs.
2. Hence arise different Conjugations, which correspond exactly with the Declensions of nouns, and are distinguished by the last letter of the crude-form.

The Conjugations are six.

First conjugation.—Crude-form ends in A.

(AMA), amo, amāvi, amātum, to love.

Second conjugation.—Crude-form ends in E.

(DELE), deleo, delēvi, delētum, to blot out.

Third conjugation.—Crude-form ends in I.

(AUDI), audio, audivi, auditum, to hear.

Fourth conjugation.—Crude-form ends in O.

(NO), nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to observe.

Fifth conjugation.—Crude-form ends in U.

(ARGU), arguo, argui, argūtum, to prove.

Sixth conjugation.—Crude-form ends in a consonant.

(REG), rego, rexi, rectum, to rule.

EXAMPLES OF VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

First Conjugation.—Crude-form in A.

(AMA), amo, amāvi, amātum. (to love.)

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

(AMA) Present. (AME)

S. 1. amo, (I love, or I am loving) S. 1. amem,
2. amās,
3. amat,
P. 1. amāmus,
2. amātis,
3. amant.
FIRST CONJU GATION.

(AMABA) Imperfect. (AMARE)
S. 1. amābam, (I was loving, or I loved) S.1. amārem,
  2. amabās,
  3. amabat,
P. 1. amabāmus,
  2. amabātis,
  3. amabant.

(AMAB) Future.
S. 1. amābo, (I shall love, or be loving).
  2. amabīs,
  3. amabit,
P. 1. amabīmus,
  2. amabītis,
  3. amabunt.

(AMAV) Perfect. (AMAVEIRI)
S. 1. amāvi, (I have loved, or I loved) S.1. amaveīrim,
  2. amavisti,
  3. amavit,
P. 1. amavīmus,
  2. amavītis,
  3. amavērunt or -ēre.

(AMAVEIRA) Pluperfect. (AMAVISSE)
S. 1. amaveīram, (I had loved) S.1. amavissem,
  2. amaverās,
  3. amaverat,
P. 1. amaverāmus,
  2. amaverātis,
  3. amaverant.

(AMAVEIR) Future-perfect.
S. 1. amaveīro, (I shall have loved).
  2. amaveīrīs,
  3. amaveīrit,
P. 1. amaveīrimus,
  2. amaveīritis,
  3. amaveīrint.
N.B. When the subjunctive mood is used potentially, it may be rendered as follows:—

Present, ut amem, that I may love.
Imperfect, ut amarem, that I might love.
Perfect, ut amaverim, that I may have loved.
Pluperfect, ut amavissem, that I might have loved.

**Imperative Mood.**

Sing. (love thou).

2. ama, amāto, (AMA) 2. amāte, amatōte,
3. amāto, 3. amanto.

N.B. The present subjunctive is often used as an imperative; as, amet, let me love; amet, let him love, &c.

**Infinitive.**

amāre. (to love)
amavisse. (to have loved)

**Participles.**

Present. amans.
(to loving; one who loves)
Perfect. —

**Future.** amatūrus.
(to be about to love) (about to love; going to love)

Gerunds.

amandi. amandum. amando.
(of loving) (to loving) (by loving)

Supines.

amātum, (to love). amātu, (in loving).

**Cognate Tenses.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amo,</td>
<td>ama,</td>
<td>amem,</td>
<td>amure,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>amabam</td>
<td>amarem</td>
<td></td>
<td>amaturum esse, amatūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amado</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>amaverim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amavi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>amavissem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.perf.</td>
<td>amaveram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.perf.</td>
<td>amavero</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Second Conjugation.—Crude-form in E.

(dele), deleo, delēvi, delētum. (to blot out.)

Indicative Mood.         Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

(dele)        (I blot out)        (delea)
S. deleo,     P. delēmus,        S. deleam,     P. deleāmus,
delēs,        delētis,           deleas,        deleātis,
dele,         deleant.           deleat,        deleant.

Imperfect.

S. delēbam, &c. (I was blotting out) S. delērem, &c.

Future.

S. delēbo, &c. (I shall blot out).

Perfect.

S. delēvi, &c. (I have blotted out) S. deleverim, &c.

Pluperfect.

S. deleveram, &c. (I had blotted out) S. delēvissem, &c.

Future-perfect.

S. delevero, &c. (I shall have blotted out).

Imperative Mood.

S. delē, delēto, (blot out). P. delēte, deletōte,
delēto, delētonto.

Infinitive.          Participles.
delēre.              Present.       delēns.
delevisse.           Perfect.       delētūrus.
deleturn esse.       Future.        delētum, -tu.

Gerunds.
delendi, -dum, -do.
Third Conjugation.—Crude-form in I.

(audi), audio, audīvi, audītum. (to hear.)

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

(audi) (I hear) (audia)
S. audio, P. audīmus, S. audiam, &c. P. audiamus, &c.
audis, audītis,
audit, audīunt.

Imperfect.
S. audīēbam, &c. (I was hearing) S. audīrem, &c.

Future.
S. audīam, P. audīēmus, (I shall hear).
audīēs, audīētis,
audīet, audīent.

Perfect.
S. audīvi, &c. (I have heard) S. audīvērim, &c.

Pluperfect.
S. audīvēram, &c. (I had heard) S. audīvissem, &c.

Future-perfect.
S. audīvēro, &c. (I shall have heard).

Imperative Mood.

S. audi, audīto, (hear). P. audīte, audītōte;
audīto, audīunto.

Infinitive. Particlpes.
audire. Present. audiens.
audivisse. Perfect. —
auditurum esse. Future. auditūrus.

Gerunds.
audiendi, -dum, -do.

Supines.
audītum, -tu.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Fourth Conjugation.—Crude-form in O.
(no), nosco, nōvi, nōtum. (to observe).

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

Present.
(nosc) (I observe) (nosca)
S. nosco, P. noscimus, S. noscam, &c. P. noscāmus, &c.
noscis, noscitis,
noscit, noscunt.

Imperfect.
S. noscēbam, &c. (I was observing) S. noscērem, &c.

Future.
S. noscam, nosces, &c. (I shall observe).

Perfect.
S. novi, &c. (I have observed) S. novērim, &c.

Pluperfect.
S. novēram, &c. (I had observed) S. novissem, &c.

Future-perfect.
S. novēro, &c. (I shall have observed).

Imperative Mood.
S. noscē, noscito, (observe). P. noscitē, noscitōte, noscunto.

Infinitive. Participles.
noscēre. Present. noscens.
novisse. Perfect. —
noturum esse. Future. notūrus.

Gerunds. Supines.
noscedi, -dum, -do. notum, -tu.

Obs. The root of nosco is (anos), (Greek, ἀγνώνω). The (e) is dropped in the simple verb, but reappears in the compounds; as, cognosco, agnosco, &c.

The sc which is added to the crude-form in the Present, and its derivatives, makes these tenses to be conjugated exactly like the Consonant Conjugation.
Fifth Conjugation.—Crude-form in U.

(ARGU), arguo, argui, argútum. (to prove).

Indicative Mood.

Present.

(ARGU) (I prove) (ARGUA)
S. arguo, P. arguēnus, S.arguam,&c. P.arguāmus,&c.
arguis, arguētis,
arguit, arguunt.

Imperfect.

S. arguēbam,&c. (I was proving) S. arguērem,&c.

Future.

S. arguam, argues,&c. (I shall prove).

Perfect.

S. argui, &c. (I have proved) S. arguērim, &c.

Pluperfect.

S. arguēram, &c. (I had proved) S. arguissem, &c.

Future-perfect.

S. arguēro, &c. (I shall have proved).

Imperative Mood.


Infinitive.

arguēre. Present.
arguisse. Perfect.
arguturum esse. Future.

Gerunds.

arguendi, -dum, -do.

Participles.

arguens. 
argutūrus.

Supines.

argútum, -tu.
Sixth Conjugation.—Crude-form in a consonant. 

(reg), rego, rexi, rectum. (to rule).

Indicative Mood.  Subjunctive Mood.

Present.  
(reg)  (I rule)  (rega)
S. rego,  P. regimus,  S. regam, &c.  P. regamus, &c.
regis,  regitis,  
regit,  regunt.

Imperfect.
S. regēbam, &c.  (I was ruling)  S. regērem, &c.

Future.
S. regam, reges, &c.  (I shall rule).

Perfect.
S. rexi, &c.  (I have ruled)  S. rexērim, &c.

Pluperfect.
S. rexēram, &c.  (I had ruled)  S. rexissem, &c.

Future-perfect.
S. rexēro, &c.  (I shall have ruled).

Imperative Mood.

S. regē, regito,  (rule).  P. regīte, regitōte.
regito,  regunto.

Infinitive.
regère.  Present.
rexisse.  Perfect.
recturum esse.  Future.

Gerunds.
regendi, -dum, -do.

Participles.
regens.
recturus.

Supines.
rectum, -tu.
FORMATION OF TENSES.

The principal parts of a Latin verb are the Present, the Perfect, and the Supine; and from these all the other tenses are derived.

The Present.

The Present, when regular, has no temporal affix; but merely adds the personal affixes to the crude-form of the verb; as, (reg), rego, regis.

Obs. In irregular verbs the present is often altered, by the change, omission, or insertion of letters. [See Irregular Verbs.]

The Perfect.

There are four ways of forming the Perfect in Latin verbs.

1st Formation.

1. The Perfect adds Vi or Ui to the crude-form of the verb; as, amo, (ama), amavi; colo, (col), colui.

2. The affix Vi is used when the crude-form ends in a vowel; and Ui when it ends in a consonant.

3. The Perfect of verbs in vo was originally formed with Vi, but afterwards the (v) was dropped; as, arguo, argüvi, argüi, argüi.

Obs. 1. This method, which is peculiar to Latin verbs, is regularly used with all vowel terminations, but seldom when the crude-form ends in a consonant.

Obs. 2. The vowel of the crude-form is always long before Vi in the perfect; as, amavi, delévi.

2nd Formation.

The Perfect adds Si to the crude-form of the verb; as, rego, (reg), (reg-si), rexi.

Obs. 1. This method is the usual formation for verbs whose crude-form ends in a consonant; it corresponds with the formation of the 1st Aorist in Greek.

Obs. 2. The last consonant of the verb is often changed or dropped before si, according to the rules of Euphony; as, premo, I press, presi; clundo, I shut, clausi.
FORMATION OF TENSES.

3rd Formation.

The Perfect adds i to the crude-form of the verb, and prefixes a reduplication; as, curro, I run, (curr), cucurri.

Obs. 1. This method, which corresponds with the formation of the Perfect in Greek, generally takes the shortest form of the verbal root; and the vowel of the reduplication is either (ε), or the same as the vowel of the verb; as, pello, I drive, pepuli; tundo, I pound, tutudi.

Obs. 2. A few verbs seem to have lost a reduplication; as, findo, I cleave, (fesidi), fidi.

4th Formation.

The Perfect adds i to the crude-form of the verb, and lengthens the preceding vowel; as, ēmo, I buy, (ēm), ēmi.

Obs. 1. This method resembles those Greek Perfects which have the temporal augment, or improper reduplication; and hence α is changed into ɛ, as α in Greek into η; thus, ago, I drive, ēgi.

Obs. 2. The last two formations being found in comparatively few verbs, are sometimes considered as irregular; they are used only when the crude-form ends in a Consonant.

The Supine.

The Supine adds TUm to the crude-form of the verb; as, amo, (ama), amátum; rego, (reg-tum), rectum.

Obs. 1. When the crude-form ends in a consonant, (i) is often inserted as a connecting vowel; and when it ends in a vowel, the vowel is long in the supine; as, geno, I groan, (gēm), gemitum; amo, amátum; deleo, delētum.

Obs. 2. In irregular verbs of the consonant conjugation, the supine sometimes ends in SUm, and always so when the crude-form ends in (d); as, lexo, I hurt, (lēd), lexum.
FORMATION OF TENSES.

DERIVATIVE TENSES.

The Derivative Tenses are formed by adding their own affixes to the crude-form of the tense from which they are derived.

**List of Derivative Tenses.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mood</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>Future-perfect</td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperative.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerund</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indicative Mood.**

**Imperfect.**

The Imperfect adds *EBAm* to the crude-form of the Present; as, amo, (ama-*EBAm*), amābam; audio, audīēbam.

*Obs.* The first vowel (*e*) of the temporal affix is lost by contraction in the A—and E—conjugations, but retained in the others; as, amēbam, delēbam.

**Future.**

1. The Future in the A—and E—conj. adds *Bo* to the crude-form of the Present, and lengthens the preceding vowel; as, amo, (ama), amābo.

2. The Future in all except the A—and E—conj. adds *Am* to the crude-form of the Present, but the (*a*) becomes (*e*) in conjugating the tense; as, audio, (audī), audiam, audies.

**Pluperfect.**

The Pluperfect adds *εRAm* to the crude-form of the Perfect; as, amavi, (amav), amavēram.

**Future-perfect.**

The Future-perfect adds *εRo* to the crude-form of the Perfect; as, amavi, (amav), amavēro.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

The Present adds Am to the crude-form of the Present Indicative; but in the A—conj. the (a) is changed into (e), and the vowel of the crude-form is lost by contraction; as, (ama-Em), amem; (delè-Am), deleam.

IMPERFECT.

The Imperfect adds ēREM to the crude-form of the Present Indicative; as, (ama-ēREM), amārem; (reg-ēREM), regĕrem.

Obs. The connecting vowel ē of the temporal affix is lost in the first three conjugations after the vowels a, e, i, but retained in the others; as, amārem, delĕrem, audĕrem.

PERFECT.

The Perfect adds ēRIM to the crude-form of the Perfect Indicative; as, (amav-ēRIM), amavĕrim.

PLUPERFECT.

The Pluperfect adds ISSEm to the crude-form of the Perfect Indicative; as, (amav-ISSEm), amavissem.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The Imperative always follows the crude-form of the Present Indicative.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

The Present Infinitive adds ēRE to the crude-form of the Present Indicative; as, (ama-ēRE), amāre; (argu-ēRE), arguĕre.

Obs. The connecting vowel ē of the temporal affix is lost in the first three conjugations after the vowels a, e, i, but retained in the others; as, amāre, delère, andīre.

PERFECT.

The Perfect Infinitive adds ISSE to the crude-form of the Perfect Indicative; as, (amav-ISSE), amavisse.
Formation of Persons.

Future.

The Future Infinitive is formed by the Future participle and the Infinitive esse, to be; as, amaturum esse.

Participles.

The Present Participle adds eNS (enēi) to the crude-form of the Present Indicative; as, (ama-eNS), amans; (audi-eNS), audiens.

Obs. The vowel (e) of the participial affix is lost in the A—and E—conjugations, but retained in the others; as, amans, delens, audiens.

The Future Participle adds Rus (no) to the crude-form of the Supine; as, (amatu-Rus), amaturus.

Gerunds.

The Gerunds add eNDi -um -o (endo) to the crude-form of the Present Indicative; as, (ama-eNDi), amandi; (audi-eNDi), audiendi.

Obs. The first vowel of the gerundial affix is lost in the A—and E—conjugations, but retained in the others; as, amandi, delendi, audiendi.

Formation of Persons.

1. The complete form of the Personal affixes is the following:

   Sing. O (or M), iS, iT.
   Plur. iMUS, iTIS, uNT.

2. When the crude-form of a tense ends in a consonant, these personal affixes are used without any alteration; as,

   amab-O, amabo.
   amab-iS, amabis.
   amab-iT, amabit.
   amab-iMUS, amabimus.
   amab-iTIS, amabitis.
   amab-uNT, amabunt.

3. When the crude-form of a tense ends in a vowel (a, e, i), the 1st Person takes (m) instead of h
(o), except in the Pres. Indicative; and the connecting vowels of the Personal affixes are absorbed, and lost; as,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{amaba-}M, & \quad \text{amabam.} & \quad \text{amaba-iMUS, amabâmus.} \\
\text{amaba-}iS, & \quad \text{amabäs.} & \quad \text{amaba-iTIS, amabâlis.} \\
\text{amaba-}iT, & \quad \text{amabat.} & \quad \text{amaba-unT, amabant.}
\end{align*}
\]

Obs. 1. Whenever the crude-form of a tense ends in a vowel, it always becomes long, by combining with the connecting vowel of the personal affixes; as, (ama-iS), amâs; (dele-iMUS), delêmus; audi-iTIS), auditis.

Obs. 2. Hence the perfect subjunctive will naturally have the (i) long in the Plural; as, (amaneri-imus), amanerimus; and the future-perfect the (i) short; as, (amaner-imus), amanerinimus. Yet both are found long and short in verse.

Obs. 3. Amût, delet, and other 3rd persons, have the vowel short on account of the final r. [See Prosody.] Yet the vowel appears long in the Passive voice; as, ( amat-ur), amâtur.

4. The Present Indicative must be remarked. It takes (o) for the 1st Pers. throughout all the conjugations. The connecting vowel u is not lost after any vowels, except (A) and (e);—and in the U—conjugation all the vowels remain uncontracted; thus,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ama-}O, & \quad \text{amo.} & \quad \text{dele-}O, & \quad \text{deleo.} & \quad \text{audi-}O, & \quad \text{audio.} \\
\text{ama-iS}, & \quad \text{amâs.} & \quad \text{dele-iS}, & \quad \text{deleis.} & \quad \text{audi-iS}, & \quad \text{audis.} \\
\text{ama-}iT, & \quad \text{amat.} & \quad \text{dele-}iT, & \quad \text{delet.} & \quad \text{audi-}iT, & \quad \text{audit.} \\
\text{ama-iMUS, amâmus.} & \quad \text{dele-iMUS, delêmus.} & \quad \text{audi-iMUS, audimus.} \\
\text{ama-iTIS, amâtis.} & \quad \text{dele-iTIS, delêtis.} & \quad \text{audi-iTIS, auditis.} \\
\text{ama-unT, amunt.} & \quad \text{dele-unT, delent.} & \quad \text{audi-unT, audient.}
\end{align*}
\]

5. The Perfect Indicative has peculiar affixes,

\[
\begin{align*}
I, & \quad \text{ISTI, } iT; & \quad \text{iMUS, ISTIS, } \bar{iRUNT, (ERE).} \\
\text{amav-}I, & \quad \text{amavi.} & \quad \text{amav-iMUS, amavimus.} \\
\text{amav-}ISTI, & \quad \text{amavisti.} & \quad \text{amav-ISTIS, amavistis.} \\
\text{amav-}iT, & \quad \text{amavit.} & \quad \text{amav-}\bar{iRUNT, amavérunt.}
\end{align*}
\]

6. The Personal affixes for the Imperative are,

\[
\begin{align*}
e, & \quad \text{iTO, } iTO; & \quad \text{iTE, iTOTE, unTO.} \\
\text{ama-}e, & \quad \text{ama.} & \quad \text{ama-}iTO, & \quad \text{amâto.} \\
\text{ama-}iTE, & \quad \text{amâte.} & \quad \text{ama-}iTOTE, & \quad \text{amatóle.} \\
\text{ama-unTO, amantò.}
\end{align*}
\]
THE VERB SUM.

Obs. 1. The Imperative in the 2nd sing. might be considered as merely the crude-form of the verb without any affix; as, ama, dele, audi; only a short (ē) is commonly added in the U—and consonant conj.; as, arguē, regē; and a, e, i, in the other conjugations are always long, as if from contraction.

Obs. 2. The different affixes for the 1st Pers. sing. o, m, i, may be compared with the Greek verbs in ο and μι.

The Verb Sum, I am.

The verb Sum, although irregular, is introduced here, because it is used as an auxiliary in conjugating Passive verbs.

Sum is called a substantive verb, because it denotes subsistence, or being.

**Sum, crude-form (es).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Mood</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(es)</td>
<td>(I am)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. sum, es, est</td>
<td>S. sim, sis, sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. sīmus, estis, sunt</td>
<td>P. sīmus, sītis, sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(era)</td>
<td>(I was)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. ēram, eras, erat</td>
<td>S. essem, esses, esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. erāmus, crātis, erant</td>
<td>P. essēmus, essētis, essent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Also, S. förem, fores, foret,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. — — forent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(er)</td>
<td>(I shall be).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. ēro, eris, erit,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. erīmus, erītis, erunt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(fu)</td>
<td>(I have been)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. fui, fuisti, fuit, S. fuerim, -ris, -rit,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. fuīmus, -ītis, -ērunt(e). P. fuerīmus, -ritis, -rint.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE VERB SUM.

Pluperfect.

(fuera) (I had been) (fuisse)
S. fuēram, fueras, fuerat, S. fuissetem, -isses, -isset,
P. fuerānus, -rātis, -rant. P. fuissentemus, -setis, -sent.

Future-perfect.

(fuer) (I shall have been).
S. fuero, fueris, fuerit,
P. fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.

Imperative Mood.

(es) (Be thou).
S. — es, esto, esto, P. — este, estote, sunto.

Infinitive Mood. Participles.

esse (to be). Present. —

fuisse (to have been). Perfect. —

futurum esse, or fore. Future. futurus.
(to be about to be) (about to be)

Obs. 1. The crude-form of the Present sum, and its derivatives, is (es), like the Greek εἰμι, I am; but sometimes the (e) is dropped, as in sum, sumus, &c. Sometimes the (s) is omitted, or changed into r; as, eram, ero; Greek ἐγενησαί; compare also the English words is and are, was and were. Other irregularities are produced by contraction; as, essem for es-erem; esse for es-ere. An older form of the Present Subjunctive is siem, sitis, &c.

Obs. 1. The crude-form of the perfect sui, and its derivatives, is (fu), (Greek φημ), from which the tenses and persons are regularly formed.

A Present subjunctive from the same root is sometimes used; as, Tros Tyriusce fuat, be he Trojan or Tyrian.

Forem and fore perhaps come from the same crude-form (fu), being contracted from fu-erem, fu-ere; hence fore appears sometimes to be used for a Present Infinitive, like esse.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

First Conjugation.—Amor. (I am loved).

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

Present. (I am loved)

Sing. 1. amor,
  2. amāris (-re),
  3. amātur,
Plur. 1. amāmur,
  2. amamīni,
  3. amantur.

Sing. 1. amer,
  2. amēris (-re),
  3. amētur,
Plur. 1. amēmur,
  2. amemīni,
  3. amentur.

Imperfect. (I was loved)

Sing. 1. amābar,
  2. amabāris (-e),
  3. amabātur,
Plur. 1. amabāmur,
  2. amabamīni,
  3. amabantur.

Sing. 1. amārer,
  2. amarēris (-e),
  3. amarētur,
Plur. 1. amarēmur,
  2. amaremīni,
  3. amarentur.

Future. (I shall be loved)

Sing. 1. amābor,
  2. amabēris (-e),
  3. amabētur,
Plur. 1. amabīmur,
  2. amabimīni,
  3. amabuntur.

Perfect. (I have been loved, or I loved)

S.1. amātus sum, or fui,
  2. amatus es, or fuisti,
  3. amatus est, or fuit,
P.1. amatis sumus, or fuimus,
  2. amati estis, or fuistis,
  3. amati sunt, fuerunt(e),
S.1. amātus sim, or fuerim,
  2. amatus sis, or fueris,
  3. amatus sit, or fuerit,
P.1. amatis simus, or fuerimus,
  2. amati sitis, or fueritis,
  3. amati sint, or fuerint.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

Pluperfect. (I had been loved)
S.1. amātuseram, or fueram, S.1. amatus essem, or fuisset.
2. amatus eras, or fueras, 2. amatus esses, or fuisses.
3. amatus erat, or fuerat, 3. amatus esset, or fuisset.
P.1. amati eramus, fueramus, P.1. amati essamus, fuissent.
 2. amati eratis, or fueratis, 2. amati essetis, or fuissentis.
 3. amati erant, or fuerant. 3. amati essent, or fuissent.

Future-perfect. (I shall have been loved)
S.1. amātus ero, or fuero,
 2. amatus eris, or fueris,
 3. amatus erit, or fuerit,
P.1. amati erimus, or fuerimus,
 2. amati eritis, or fueritis,
 3. amati erunt, or fuerint.

   Imperative Mood.

   (Be thou loved).

S. 2. amāre, amātor,  P.2. amamīni, amamīnor,
 3. amātor,  3. amanītor.

   Infinitive.  Participles.

   amāri. Present. ——
   (to be loved)  amātus.

   amātum esse.  Perfect.  (loved, or one who has
   (to have been loved)  been loved)

   amātum iri.  Future.  amandus.
   (to be about to be loved)  (to be loved; or one who
   ought to be loved)

Cognate Tenses.

   Pres. amor, amare,  {   amāri.
   Imp. amabār, amāre,  amārer,   ——
   Fut. amabōr,  { amātum iri, amandus.
   Perf. amātus sum,  amātus sim,  { amātum esse, amatus.
   P.perf. amatus eram,  amātus esse,  { amātus essem, amatus.
   F.perf. amatus ero.
Second Conjugation.—Deleor. (I am blotted out).

**Indicative Mood.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present. (I am blotted out)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. deleor, P. delēmur, S. delear, P. deleāmur, delēris(e), deleminī, deleāris(e), deleamīni, delētur, delentur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular.**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect. (I was blotted out)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. delēbar, delebāris, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future. (I shall be blotted out)**

| S. delēbor, delebēris, &c. |

**Perfect. (I have been blotted out)**

| S. delētus sum, or fui. | S. delētus sim, or fuerim. |

**Pluperfect. (I had been blotted out)**

| S. delētus eram, or fueram. | S. delētus essem, or fuissem. |

**Future-perfect. (I shall have been blotted out)**

| S. delētus ero, or fuero. |

**Imperative Mood.**

(Be thou blotted out).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative Mood.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. delēre, delētor, P. deleminī, deleminor, delētor, delentor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>delēri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delētum esse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delētum iri.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delētus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delendus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Third Conjugation.—Audior. (I am heard).

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

Present. (I am heard)
S. audior, P. audimur, S. audiār, P. audiāmur,
audiāris(e), audiāmīni, audiāris(e), audiāmīni,
audiātur, audiāuntur. audiātur, audiāuntur.

Imperfect. (I was heard)
S. audiēbar, audiēbāris, &c. S. audīrer, audiērēris, &c.

Future. (I shall be heard)
S. audiar, audiēris, &c.

Perfect. (I have been heard)
S. audiūtus sum, or fui. S. audiūtus sim, or fuerim.

Pluperfect. (I had been heard)
S. audiūtus eram, or fueram. S. audiūtus essem, or fuissem.

Future-perfect. (I shall have been heard)
S. audiūtus ero, or fuero.

Imperative Mood.

(Be thou heard).
S. audīre, auditor, P. audimīni, audimīnīor,
auditor, audiuntor.

Infinitive. Participles.
audīri. Present. —
auditum esse. Perfect. audiūtus.
auditum iri. Future. audiēndus.
Fourth Conjugation.—Noscor. (I am observed)

**Indicative Mood.**

Present. (I am observed)

S. noscor, P. noscimus, nosciss(e), noscimusini, noscitur, noscuntur.

S. noscar, P. noscimus, nosciss(e), noscimini, noscatur, noscantur.

Imperfect. (I was observed)

S. noscessar, noscebarsis, &c. S. noscere, nosceraris, &c.

Future. (I shall be observed)

S. noscar, nosciris, &c.

Perfect. (I have been observed)

S. notus sum, or fui.

S. notus sim, or fuerim.

Pluperfect. (I had been observed)

S. notus eram, or fueram.

S. notus essum, or fuisse.

Future-perfect. (I shall have been observed)

S. notus ero, or fuero.

**Imperative Mood.**

(Be thou observed).

S. noscere, noscitor, noscsum.

P. noscimini, noscimitor, noscuntor.

**Infinitive.**

**Participle.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nosci.</td>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>notus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notum esse.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td>noscendus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notum iri.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Future.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fifth Conjugation.—Arguor. (I am proved).

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

Present. (I am proved)
S. arguor, P. arguēmur, S. arguar, P. arguāmur,
arguēris(e), arguimīni, arguāris(e), arguamīni,
arguītūr, arguuntūr. arguātūr, arguantūr.

Imperfect. (I was proved)
S. arguēbar, arguebāris, &c. S. arguērer, arguerēris, &c.

Future. (I shall be proved)
S. arguar, arguēris, &c.

Perfect. (I have been proved)
S. argūtus sum, or fui. S. argūtus sim, or fuerim.

Pluperfect. (I had been proved)
S. argūtus eram, or fueram. S. argūtus essem, or fuissem.

Future-perfect. (I shall have been proved)
S. argūtus ero, or fuero.

Imperative Mood.

(Be thou proved).
S. arguēre, arguītor,
P. arguimīni, arguimīnor,
arguītor, arguuntor.

Infinitive.
argui.
argūtum esse.
argūtum iri.

Participles.
Present.
argūtus.
 Future.
arguendus.
Sixth Conjugation.—Regor. (I am ruled).

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

Present. (I am ruled)
S. regor, P. regimur, S. regar, P. regāmur,
regēris(e), regimīni, regāris(e), regamīni,
regītur, reguntur. regātur, regantur.

Imperfect. (I was ruled)
S. regēbar, regebāris, &c. S. regērer, regevēris, &c.

Future. (I shall be ruled)
S. regar, regēris, &c.

Perfect. (I have been ruled)
S. rectus sum, or fui. S. rectus sim, or fuerim.

Pluperfect. (I had been ruled)
S. rectus eram, or fueram. S. rectus esse, or fuissem.

Future-perfect. (I shall have been ruled)
S. rectus ero, or fuero.

Imperative Mood.

(Be thou ruled).
S. regère, regītor, P. regimīni, regimīnor,
regītor. reguntor.

Infinitive. Participles.
regi. Present. rectus.
rectum esse. Perfect. 
rectum iri. Future. regendus.
FORMATION OF TENSES.

1. There are no temporal affixes belonging exclusively to the Passive voice.

2. The Present, and its derivatives, are formed from the corresponding tenses and persons of the Active voice, by merely adding the personal affixes of the Passive.

3. The Perfect, and its derivatives, are formed from the Perfect participle Passive, and one of the tenses of sum; as, amātus sum.

4. The Present Infinitive adds I to the Active, instead of the final e, in the first three conjugations, and instead of the whole affix in the rest; as, amare, amari; arguere, argui.

5. The Future Participle adds eNDus (endo) to the crude form of the Present active; as, (ama-eNDus), amandus.

FORMATION OF PERSONS.

1. The Personal affixes in the Passive voice are,

   Sing.  R,        RIS, or RE,       UR.
   Plur.  R,        MINI,             UR.

2. The Passive Personal affixes are used not instead of, but in addition to the Active ones, excepting the 2nd Pers. Plur. Thus,

   S. amo-R,           amor.          ame(m)-R,        amer.
     amā(s)-RIS,      amāris.         ame(s)-RIS,    amēris.
     amat-UR,         amātur.        amet-UR,        amētur.
   P. amamu(s)-R,  amāmur.        amemunu(s)-R,  amēmur.
     amatsu(s)-MINI, amamini.     amemu(s)-MINI, amememini.
     amantu(s)-UR,  amantu.        amemu-UR,       amentur.

Observe 1. Final (m), and (s) of the Active voice, are always dropped in forming the Passive.

Observe 2. Short (i) of the Active becomes (e) before r in the Passive, according to the Rules of Euphony; as, (amabi(s)RIS), amabēris.
DEPONENTS.

Deponents are conjugated like passive verbs, except that they have participles, both of the active and passive form; and have gerunds and supines, like active verbs.

Moror, I delay.—Crude-form, (mora).

Indicative Mood. Subjunctive Mood.

Present. (I delay)
S. moror, morāris, &c. S. morer, morēris, &c.

Imperfect. (I was delaying)
S. morābar, morabāris, &c. S. morārer, morarēris, &c.

Future. (I shall delay)
S. morābor, morabēris, &c.

Perfect. (I have delayed)
S. morātus sum, or fui. S. morātus sim, or fuerim.

Pluperfect. (I had delayed).
S. morātus eram, or fueram. S. morātus essem, or fuissem.

Future-perfect. (I shall have delayed)
S. morātus ero, or fuero.

Imperative Mood.
S. morāre, morātor,&c. (delay thou).

Infinitive. Participles.
morāri. Present. morans.
(to delay) (delaying)
morātum esse. Perfect. morātus.
(to have delayed) (having delayed)
(to be about to delay) (about to delay)
(to be about to be delayed) (to be delayed)
Gerunds. Supines.

*morandi, -dum, -do.*
*(of, to, by delaying)*

*moratum, -tu.*
*(for, in the delaying)*

Obs. When a Deponent has a *transitive* meaning, it sometimes admits of a Future Infinitive and Participle with a Passive sense; as, *moratum iri, and morandus.*

The Perfect Participle also is occasionally used as Passive; as, *moratus,* having been delayed.

**NEUTER PASSIVES.**

Neuter-passives have an *Active* form in the *Present,* and its derivatives; but a *Passive* form in the *Perfect,* and its derivatives.

*Gaudeo,* I am glad.—Crude-form, (*gaude*).

**Indicative Mood.**

**Subjunctive Mood.**

Present. (I am glad)

S. *gaudeo, gaudes,* &c. S. *gaudeam, gaudeas,* &c.

Imperfect. (I was glad)

S. *gaudēbam, gaudebas,* &c. S. *gaudērem, gauderes,* &c.

Future. (I shall be glad)

S. *gaudēbo, gaudebis,* &c.

Perfect. (I have been glad)

S. *gavisus sum,* or *fui.* S. *gavisus sim,* or *fuerim.*

Pluperfect. (I had been glad)

S. *gavisus eram,* or *fueram.* S. *gavisus essem,* or *fuissem.*

Future-perfect. (I shall have been glad)

S. *gavisus ero,* or *fuero.*

**Imperative Mood.**

S. *gaudē,* *gaudēto,* &c. (be thouglad).
COMPOUND VERBS.

Infinitive.  Participle.
 gaudeō.  Present.  gaudens.
 (to be glad)  (being glad)  gavisus.
 gauisum esse.  Perfect.  (to have been glad)
 (to have been glad)  (having been glad)
 gauisūrum esse.  Future.  gavisūrus.
 (to be about to be glad)  (about to be glad)
 Gerunds.  Supine.
 gaudendi, -dum, -do.  gavisum.
 (of, to, by being glad)  (for the being glad)

Obs. The meaning of Neuter-passives sometimes partakes both of a neuter and a passive sense, and sometimes is entirely passive; as, gaudeō, I rejoice, or am made glad; rapulo, I am beaten.

COMPOUND VERBS.

Many Verbs form compounds, especially with prepositions; the short vowels ā and ē are often changed according to the rules of Euphony.

Rule 1. ā is changed into ē in

arceō, drive away.
[cando], accendo, kindle.
capto, catch at.
carpo, pluck.
damnō, condemn.
fallō, deceive.
farcio, stuff.

fatiscor, am weary.
gradiō, walk.
jactō, toss.
lactō, entice.
pario, bring forth.
partio, divide.

pasco, feed.

patior, suffer.
patro, perform.
sacro, devote.
scando, climb.
spargo, scatter.

tractō, handle.

Lines for memory.

Damnō, pasco, sacro, fallō, arceō, carpo, fatiscor,
Et capto, jactō, lactō, tractō, gradiorque,
Farcio, spargo, patro, scando, pario, patiorque,
Partio, cando vetus.

Rule 2. ā is changed into ī in

ago, drive.
[apiscr], adipiscor, get.
cado, fall.
cano, sing.
capto, take.
facio, make.
frango, break.

jacio, cast.
lateō, lie hid.
pango, fasten.
placēo, please.
rapiō, snatch.
salto, leap.
[lacio], allicio, entice.

sapio, taste.
statuō, set up.
taceō, am silent.
tango, touch.
(serō), satum, sow.
(do), datum, give.
COMPOUND VERBS.

Lines for memory.
Frango, et ago, pango, statuoque, cado, cano, tango,
Et capio, facio, jacio, rapio, sallioque,
Atque habeo, lateo, placeo, taceo, sapioque,
Addo datum, lacioque, satum, vetus adde et apiscor.

Rule 3. c is changed into û in
egeo, want. rego, rule. dedit, have given.
emo, buy. sedeo, sit. steti, have stood.
lego, read.[specio], aspicio, behold.
promo, press. teneo, hold.

Lines for memory.
Sic egeo, sedeoque, lego, teneoque, promoque,
Sic emo, cumque rego, specioque, dedique, stetique.

Rule 4. a is changed into û, in the three verbs,
cado, sly; lado, hurt; quaero, seek.

Obs. 1. When a is changed into û, it is generally followed by
two consonants, thus making the syllable necessarily a close one:
where there is only one consonant, as in pator, it is thrown
back upon the preceding vowel.

Obs. 2. When a or û is changed into û, it is followed by only
one consonant, and the syllable remains an open one: in frango,
pango, and tango, which appear exceptions, the a probably gave
merely a nasal sound to the û.

Obs. 3. Some compounds of pango, and placeo; retain the a;
depango, oppango, circumpango, repango; complaceo, perplaceo.

Obs. 4. Facio changes a into û only when compounded with a
preposition, or other particle; as, inficio, olfacio.

Obs. 5. Lego retains its vowel when compounded with re, per,
pra, sub, trans, ad.

Obs. 6. Some compounds of ago retain the vowel; as, perago.
Others contract it; as, de-ago, dego; (cum) co-ago, cogo.

Obs. 7. The compounds of calco, tread; quatio, shake; salto,
leap; change a into u; as, inculco, percuto, resulito.

Obs. 8. The compounds of clando, shut, and lavo, wash, cast
out the a; as, oculudo, deluo.

Obs. 9. Some compounds of rego are contracted in the Present;
as, pergò, perrexì; suryo, surrexì.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular Verbs may be divided into two classes:—

I. Verbs which are irregular in the formation of the Present, Perfect, or Supine, when the alterations thus introduced remain constant in all the derivative tenses.

II. Verbs which are irregular in the formation of particular tenses or persons, without necessarily affecting any of their derivatives.

CLASS I.

Irregular in the Present, Perfect, or Supine.

Obs. Almost all the irregular verbs in Latin belong to this class.

Causes of Irregularity.

1. A double crude-form—one for the Present, the other for the Perfect; as, domo, I tame, (doma) and (dom). A very large number of the irregular verbs are of this kind; perhaps no others but these should be considered irregular.

Obs. When there are two crude-forms, it is sometimes difficult to decide which is the original, and which the altered one. But the crude-form of the Perfect is generally the more simple, and is sometimes known to be the older of the two; whereas many alterations may be traced in the Present.

Alterations made in the Present.

1. By adding a vowel; as, sone, I sound, (son), (sona); capio, I take, (cap), (capi).

2. By inserting (n) before the last consonant; as, (frag, frang), frango, I break; (rup, runr), rumpo, I break. This (n) is sometimes retained in the Perfect; as, finjo, finxi, I feign; and sometimes throughout the verb, thus making it regular; as, (jug), jungo, junxi, junctum, I join.

3. By adding (n) to the crude-form; as, (tem, temn), temno, I despise; (pos, posn), (posno), pono, I place: also by transposition, (cre, cern), cerno, I see.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

4. By adding (a) to the crude-form; as, (se, ser), sero, I sow.
5. By adding (t) to the crude-form; as, (flec, flect), lecto, I bend.
6. By softening final c or g into v or h, or dropping it altogether; as, (vic, viv), vivo, I live, vixi; (trah, trahi), traho, I draw, traxi; (flug, flu), fluo, I flow, fluxi.
7. By adding (sc) to the crude-form; as, (pa, pasc), pasco, I feed, passi. This termination properly belongs to inceptive verbs; but some have it without any inceptive meaning.
8. The letters c, d, g, l, r, s, t, v, are sometimes found in the Present, and not in other parts of the verb, when their omission may be considered as merely euphonic, since it takes place only before s, (or sometimes t). (d) and (t) are always dropped or changed before s. [See Rules of Euphony].

II. A less usual formation adopted in the Perfect.

Obs. In the consonant conjugation the second formation of the Perfect (in si) is considered the regular one; and therefore all other formations are sometimes reckoned as irregular, merely for the sake of distinction.

Also when the last consonant of the crude-form is dropped, or changed into s, before si, the verb is put down as an irregular one. The consonants thus changed are b, c, d, g, m, r, t.

III. The Supine ending in iTUm or SUM.

Obs. 1. When the supine ends in iTUm, having t for a connecting vowel, the Perfect is found to end in Ui; as, domo, I tame, domui, domitum: to this there are only two exceptions, fugio, I flee, fugi, fugitum; and bibo, I drink, bibi, bibitum.

Obs. 2. All verbs which have a crude-form ending in (d) or (t) make the supine in SUM, and drop or change the (d) or (t) before it; as, clavo, I shut, clavi, clavum; sodio, I dig, (fod), fossum; verto, I turn, versum; quatio, I shake, (quat), quassum.

Some other verbs make the supines in SUM, but they are mostly irregular in other respects also.

Obs. 3. Some supines ending in TUm are irregular, from the loss or change of consonants before TUm; as, torreo, I roast, (torr), tostatum.

Obs. 4. The crude-form generally appears the same in the Supine as it does in the Perfect; but there are some exceptions; as, sepelivi, sepultum.


LISTS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

The verbs in the following lists are placed in four divisions, according to the four formations of the Perfect; and the verbs in each division are arranged according to the conjugation which appears in the Present.

I. First formation of the Perfect—*Vi*, or *Ui*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Pres.)</th>
<th>(Perf.)</th>
<th>(Present.)</th>
<th>(Perfect.)</th>
<th>(Supine.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CREPA</td>
<td>CREP</td>
<td>crepo,</td>
<td>crepu,</td>
<td>crepitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUBA</td>
<td>CUB</td>
<td>cubo,</td>
<td>cubui,</td>
<td>cubitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMA</td>
<td>DOM</td>
<td>domo,</td>
<td>domui,</td>
<td>domitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENECA</td>
<td>ENEC</td>
<td>eneco,</td>
<td>eneci,</td>
<td>enectum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *neco*, I kill, is regular, *necavi*, *necatum*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FRICA</th>
<th>FRIC</th>
<th>frico,</th>
<th>fricui,</th>
<th>frictum (fricatum).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MICA</td>
<td>MIC</td>
<td>mico,</td>
<td>micui,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *emico*, shine out, *emici*, *emicatum*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECIA</th>
<th>SEC</th>
<th>seco,</th>
<th>secui,</th>
<th>sectum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SONA</td>
<td>SON</td>
<td>sono,</td>
<td>sonui,</td>
<td>sonitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TONA</td>
<td>TON</td>
<td>tono,</td>
<td>tonui,</td>
<td>tonitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VETA</td>
<td>VET</td>
<td>veto,</td>
<td>vetui,</td>
<td>vetitum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| CENSE   | CENS   | censeo,    | censui,    | censum.            |

- *recenseo* has also *recensitum*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CIE</th>
<th>CI</th>
<th>ciego,</th>
<th>civi,</th>
<th>citum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DOCIE</td>
<td>DOC</td>
<td>docieo,</td>
<td>docui,</td>
<td>doctum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISCE</td>
<td>MIS</td>
<td>misceo,</td>
<td>miscui,</td>
<td>mistum, mistum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONE</td>
<td>MON</td>
<td>moneo,</td>
<td>monui,</td>
<td>monitum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the same manner, *debeo*, owe; *habeo*, have; *mereo*, deserve; *pareo*, obey; *placeo*, please; *praeko*, afford; *tereo*, frighten.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SORBE</th>
<th>SORB</th>
<th>sorbeo,</th>
<th>sorbui,</th>
<th>sorpsi, sorptum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TENE</td>
<td>TEN</td>
<td>teneo,</td>
<td>tenui,</td>
<td>tentum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>TIM</td>
<td>timeo,</td>
<td>timui,</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TORRE</td>
<td>TOR</td>
<td>torreo,</td>
<td>torrui,</td>
<td>tostum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1) E</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>eo,</th>
<th>ivo,</th>
<th>itum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AMICI</td>
<td>AMIC</td>
<td>amicio,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>amictum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUPIA</td>
<td>CUP</td>
<td>cupio,</td>
<td>cupivi,</td>
<td>cupitum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAPI</td>
<td>RAP</td>
<td>rapio,</td>
<td>rapui,</td>
<td>raptum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALI</td>
<td>SAL</td>
<td>saio,</td>
<td>salui,</td>
<td>saltum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAPI</td>
<td>SAP</td>
<td>sapio,</td>
<td>sapavi,</td>
<td>sapati.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Perfect *sapui* is mostly used in compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SEPULI</th>
<th>SEPULIO,</th>
<th>sepeli,</th>
<th>bury,</th>
<th>sepelivi, sepultum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

In the same manner, *debeo*, owe; *habeo*, have; *mereo*, deserve; *pareo*, obey; *placeo*, please; *praeko*, afford; *tereo*, frighten.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

LU,  luo,  pay,  lui,  (luitum).
RU,  ruo,  rush,  rui,  ruitum.

In compound verbs, the Supine is ruitum.

LQUÉ,  LIQ,  linguo,  leave,  liqui,  (lictum).
PASC,  PAS,  pasco,  feed,  pavi,  pastum.
The compounds compesco and dispesco have Perf. pescui.

STERN,  STRA,  sterno,  strew,  stravi,  stratum.
CRESC,  CRE,  cresco,  grow,  crevi,  (cretum).
SUESC,  SUE,  suesco, am accustomed, suevi,  (suetum).
CERN,  CRE,  cerno,  see,  crevi,  cretum.
SPERN,  SPRE,  sperno,  despise,  sprevi,  spretum.
SER,  SE,  sers,  sow,  sevi, satum.
ACCESS,  ACCESSI,  accesso,  fetch,  accessivi,  accessitum.

In the same manner, capesso, undertake; facesso, hasten; lacceso, provoke; incesso, attack.

LIN,  LI,  lino,  smear,  livi,  levi,  litum.
PET,  PETI,  peto,  seek,  petivi,  petitum.
QUER,  QUÉSI,  quaro,  inquire,  quasivi,  quasitum.
SIN,  SI,  sino,  suffer,  sivi,  situm.
TER,  TRI,  tero,  rub,  trivi,  tritum.
NOSC,  NO (GNO), nosco, observe, novi, notum.
cognosco and agnosco make supine cognitum, agnitum.

AL,  alo,  nourish,  alivi,  alitum.
MOL,  molo,  grind,  molui,  molitum.
FREM,  fremo,  roar,  fremui,  fremitum.

In the same manner, gemo, groan; tremo, tremble; vomo, vomit.

DIPS,  dipso,  knead,  dipsui,  dipsitum, depsitum.
PINS,  PIS,  pinso,  grind,  pinsui,  pinxitum, pistum.
COL,  colo,  till,  colui,  cultum.
CONSUL,  consulo,  consult,  consului, consultum.
OCCUL,  occulo,  hide,  occultui, occultum.
SER,  sero,  arrange,  serui,  sertum.
STER,  stero,  snore,  stertui.
VOL,  volo,  wish,  volui.
MET,  MESS,  meto,  reap,  messui, messum.
GIGN,  GEN,  gigno,  produce, genui, genitum.
FÜN,  FÜNS, pono, place, posui, positum.

In the Present N is added; thus (posno), pño.

Obs. 1. Plico, (plica), I fold, is regular; but its compounds, except supplico and multiplico, form also a Perfect plicui, and Supine plcitum, from (plíc).

Obs. 2. A large number of neuter verbs are conjugated like timeo; having ui in the Perfect, and no Supine. Of these the verbs careo, want; dolceo, grieve; lateo, lie hid; noceo, hurt; taceo, am silent; valeo, am well; have the Future Participle, though no Supine.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

Very few verbs of the 2nd conj. are quite regular. The principal instances are, deleo; fleo, weep; neo, spin; and the compounds of pleo, fill.

Obs. 3. Aresco, peto, and quaro have the vowel in the Perfect and not in the Present: the I must probably be considered to belong to the root, and to have been omitted in the Present.

Obs. 4. The root of nosco is (γνο), (Greek γνῶσις), the g being dropped in the simple verb, but appearing in the compounds. It is almost the only instance of a verb of the O— conjugation.

Obs. 5. Gigno has a reduplication in the Present, like the Greek ἔγνωπαί.

II. Second formation of the Perfect—Si.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JUBE</th>
<th>JUB</th>
<th>jubeo,</th>
<th>order, (jub-si) jussi, jussum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LUCE</td>
<td>LUC</td>
<td>luco,</td>
<td>shine, luxi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULCE</td>
<td>MULC</td>
<td>mulceo,</td>
<td>soothe, mulsi, mulsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARDE</td>
<td>ARD</td>
<td>ardeo,</td>
<td>burn, arsi, arsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIDE</td>
<td>RID</td>
<td>rides,</td>
<td>laugh, risi, risum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUADE</td>
<td>SUAD</td>
<td>suadeo,</td>
<td>exhort, suasi, suasum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUGE</td>
<td>AUG</td>
<td>augeo,</td>
<td>increase, auri, auctum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRIGE</td>
<td>FRIG</td>
<td>frigeo,</td>
<td>am cold, firi,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUGE</td>
<td>LUG</td>
<td>lugeo,</td>
<td>mourn, luxi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALGE</td>
<td>ALG</td>
<td>alceo,</td>
<td>am cold, alsi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FULGE</td>
<td>FULG</td>
<td>fulgeo,</td>
<td>shine, fulsi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDULGE</td>
<td>INDULG</td>
<td>indulgeo,</td>
<td>indulge, indus, indultum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULGE</td>
<td>MULG</td>
<td>mulgeo,</td>
<td>milk, mulsi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEBGE</td>
<td>TEBG</td>
<td>tergeo,</td>
<td>wipe, tersi, tersum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also tergo in the Present.

Also used only in composition; as, allicio, allure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LACI</th>
<th>LAC</th>
<th>lacio,</th>
<th>lexi, lectum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPECI</td>
<td>SPEC</td>
<td>specio,</td>
<td>speci, spectum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also used only in composition; as, aspicio, behold.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SANC</th>
<th>SANC</th>
<th>sanco,</th>
<th>sanction, sanzi, sanctum, sanctum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VINC</td>
<td>VINC</td>
<td>vincio,</td>
<td>bind, vinzi, vinctum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEP</td>
<td>SEP</td>
<td>sepio,</td>
<td>hedge, sepsi, septum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUAT</td>
<td>QUAT</td>
<td>quatio,</td>
<td>shake, (quassi), quassum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FARCI</td>
<td>FARC</td>
<td>farcio,</td>
<td>stuff, farsi, fortum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FULCI</td>
<td>FULC</td>
<td>fulcio,</td>
<td>prop, fulsi, fultum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HAURI, HAUR, haurio, draw up, hausi, haustum.
RAUCI, RAUC, raucio, am hoarse, rausi.
SARCI, SARC, sarcio, patch, sarsi, sartum.
SENI, SENT, sentio, feel, sensi, sensum.
FLU, FLUG, fluo, flow, fluxi, fluxum.
STRU, STRUG, struo, build, struxi, structum.
[STINGU, STING, stingo, stinxi, stinctum].

Used only in composition; as, exstingo, extinguish.

CLAUD, claudo, shut, clausi, clausum.
In the same manner, divido, divide; ledo, hurt; ludo, play; plaudo, clap; rado, shave; rodo, gnaw; trudo, thrust; vado, go.

CED, cedo, yield, cessi, cessum.
GEO, gero, bear, gessi, gestum.
PREM, premo, press, pressi, pressum.
UR, uro, burn, ussi, ustum.
MERG, mergo, sink, mersi, mersum.
SPARG, spargo, scatter, sparsi, sparsum.
PING, (fig),ingo, feign, finxi, fictum.
So also pingo, paint; ringo, grin; stringo, bind.

TEMP, TEM, temno, despise, [temsi, temtum].
Temno has no Perfect or Supine except in composition.

PECT, FLEC, flecto, bend, flexi, flexum.
So pecto, comb; and necto, bind; which also makes nexui.

TRAH, TRAG, traaho, drag, traxi, tractum.
VEH, VEG, veho, carry, vexi, rectum.
VIV, VIC, vivo, live, vizi, victum.

III. Third formation of the Perfect—Reduplication.

DA, D, do, give, dedi, datum.
Do has the (a) short throughout, and approaches to the consonant declension, to which most of its compounds belong.

STA, ST, sto, stand, steti, statum.

MORDE, MORD, mordeo, bite, momordi, morsum.
PENDE, PEND, pendo, hang, pependi, pensum.
SPONDE, SPOND, spondeo, engage, spopondi, sponsum.
TONDE, TOND, tondeo, shear, totondi, tonsum.

PARI, PAR, pario, bring forth, pepiri, partum.
The compounds comperio and reperio make Perfect peri; the rest perui.

CAD, cado, fall, cecidi, casum.
CAD, cado, kill, cecidi, casum.
CAN, cuno, sing, cecini, cantum.
The compounds make cinui in the Perfect.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

[CELL, CUL, cello, occuli, culsum.]

Used only in compounds; as, percello, strike down, perculi: antecelio, excello, praelcello, surpass, appear sometimes to make the Perfect in -ui.

CURR, curro, run, cucurri, cursum.
DISC, dicso, learn, dûlici. —
FALL, fallo, deceive, fesellii, falsum.
PANG, pango, bargain, pepîgi, pactum.

The compounds generally make pêgi in the Perfect.
pango, I strike, is regular.

PARC, parco, spare, peperci, (parsi), parsum.
PELL, pello, drive away, pepilii, pulsum.
PEND, pendo, weigh, pependi, pensum.
POSC, posco, demand, poposci. —
PUNG, pungo, prick, pupügi, punctum.

The compounds make punzi in the Perfect; repungo, also repupügi.

SIST, st, sisto, stop, stiti. —
TANG, tago, touch, teiñi, tactum.
BIB, bibo, drink, bibi (bibibi &) bibitum.
FIND, fid, findo, cleave, fidi (fesidi), fissum.
SCIND, scid, scindo, cut, sciñi (sciçidi), scissum.
TOLL, tul, tollo, take up, tûli (tetuli), latum.

Obs. 1. The syllable of reduplication is generally lost in compound verbs. But several compounds of curro make curri, or cucurri; and the compounds of do, disco, sto, posco, retain the reduplication.

Obs. 2. Pendeo differs from pendo only in having e inserted in the Present, and in having a neuter signification; while pendo is transitive.

Obs. 3. Sisto has a reduplication in the Present, like the Greek ΣΤΑ, ΣΤΝΜ.".

Obs. 4. Bibo, findo, scindo, tollo, seem to have had a reduplication in the Perfect and to have lost it. Sustuli and sublatum are commonly used as the Perfect and Supine of tollo; while tuli and latum are transferred to jero, I bear. Latum, from tollo, is probably for tlatum, like the Greek τάλω, I endure, τολυ, τλήων.

IV. Fourth formation of the Perfect—Penultima Long.

JUVA, juv, jûvo, help, jûvi, (jurtum), jûtum.
LAVA, lav, lâvo, waah, lâvi, (lavratum), lautum.
PRANDE, prand, prandeo, dine, prandi, pransum.
(Pransus sum),
IRREGULAR VERBS.

SEDE, SED, sēdeo, sit, sēdi, sessum.
STRIDE, STRID, strideo, shriek, stridi. —
VIDE, VID, vdeo, see, vidi, visum.
CAVE, CAV, cauveo, beware, caui, cautum.

So also fāveo, favour; pāveo, dread, (no Supine).

FERVE, FERV, ferveo, am hot, fervi.
FOVE, FOV, foveo, cherish, fovi, (fotum), fotum.

So also moveo, move; vōveo, vow.

CAPI, CAP, cāpio, take, cēpi, captum.
FODI, FOD, fodio, dig, fodi, fossum.
FUGI, FUG, fugio, flee, fugi, fugitum.
VENI, VEN, venio, come, vēni, ventum.

SCAB, SCAB, scratch, scābi. —
LAMB, LAM, lambo, lick, lambi. —
IC, IGO, strike, ico, ictus.

Ico is used only for “striking a treaty,” except in the passive ictus.

VINCI, VIC, vincio, conquer, vici, victum.
ED, ēdo, eat, ēdi, ēsum.
SID, sidio, settle, sidi. —
CUP, ĕudo, forge, ĕdi, ēsum.
RUD, rūdo, bray, rūdi. —
FUND, FUD, fundo, pour, fudi, fustum.
MAND, MAND, mando, bite, mandi, (mansum).

So also pando, expand, (passum); scando, climb.

ACCEND, ACCEND, kindle, accendi, accensum.

So also incendo, set on fire; defendo, defend; offendō, offend; frenendo, gnash, (fressum); prehendo, take.

AG, āgo, act, āgi, actum.
FRANG, FRAG, frango, break, frēgi, fractum.
LEG, ĭgo, read, ĭgi, lectum.

Intelligo, understand; diligo, love; negligo, neglect; make lexi;
other compounds ĭgi, in the Perfect.

PSALL, psallo, { play on an } psalli. —
VELL, vello, { instrument, } vellum.
EM, ēmo, buy, ēmi, emtum.
RUMP, RUP, rumpo, break, rūpi, ruptum.
VERR, verrō, brush, verri, (versum).
VIS, viso, visit, visi, (visum).
MITT, MIT, mitto, send, misi, missum.
VERT, VERT, verto, turn, verti, versum.
SOLV, SOLU, solvo, loose, solvi, solution.
VOLV, VOLU, volvo, roll, volvi, rollum.
IRREGULAR DEponents.

I. Two crude-forms, or some irregularity in the Perfect Participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mere,</th>
<th>Mer,</th>
<th>mereor,</th>
<th>deserve,</th>
<th>meritus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>So also polliceor, promise; tueor, defend; vereor, fear.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Re,</th>
<th>Ræ,</th>
<th>reor,</th>
<th>suppose,</th>
<th>ratus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Misere,</th>
<th>Miser,</th>
<th>misereor,</th>
<th>pity,</th>
<th>misertus, (miseritus).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fate,</th>
<th>Fat,</th>
<th>lateor,</th>
<th>confess,</th>
<th>fassus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absentia,</th>
<th>Absent,</th>
<th>adserior,</th>
<th>assent,</th>
<th>adserius.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Experio,</th>
<th>Xper,</th>
<th>experior,</th>
<th>try,</th>
<th>experius.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>So also opperior, wait for.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gradi,</th>
<th>Grad,</th>
<th>gradior,</th>
<th>walk,</th>
<th>gressus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meti,</th>
<th>Men,</th>
<th>metior,</th>
<th>measure,</th>
<th>mensus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mori,</th>
<th>Mort,</th>
<th>morior,</th>
<th>die,</th>
<th>mortuus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordi,</th>
<th>Ord,</th>
<th>ordior,</th>
<th>begin,</th>
<th>orsus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ori,</th>
<th>Or,</th>
<th>orior,</th>
<th>arise,</th>
<th>oritus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pati,</th>
<th>Pat,</th>
<th>patior,</th>
<th>suffer,</th>
<th>passus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frui,</th>
<th>Frug,</th>
<th>fruor,</th>
<th>enjoy,</th>
<th>fructus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Loqu,</th>
<th>Locu,</th>
<th>loquor,</th>
<th>speak,</th>
<th>locutus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>So also sequor, follow.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ampli,</th>
<th>Ampli,</th>
<th>amplior,</th>
<th>embrace,</th>
<th>ampexus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Also complector, apparently derived from plecto, I twine.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lab,</th>
<th>labor,</th>
<th>glide,</th>
<th>lapsus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nit,</th>
<th>Nic,</th>
<th>niitor,</th>
<th>strive,</th>
<th>nixus, nisus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quer,</th>
<th>Ques,</th>
<th>queror,</th>
<th>complain,</th>
<th>questus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ut,</th>
<th>Ut,</th>
<th>ulor,</th>
<th>use,</th>
<th>usus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Obs. Loquor and sequor merely interchange the kindred letters q and c; and queror only retains the older form with s in the Perfect. Labor is only irregular as making the Perfect in sus.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. The Present having the form of an Inceptive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irasc,</th>
<th>IRA,</th>
<th>irascor,</th>
<th>am angry,</th>
<th>iratus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nasce,</th>
<th>NA,</th>
<th>nasco,</th>
<th>am born,</th>
<th>natus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adipisc,</th>
<th>Adep,</th>
<th>adipiscor,</th>
<th>gain,</th>
<th>adeptus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compound of ad—apiscor.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Commisc,</th>
<th>Commen,</th>
<th>comminiscor,</th>
<th>invent,</th>
<th>commentus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Also reminiscor, remember—Root men. Seen also in mens, memini, &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expergisc,</th>
<th>Experreg,</th>
<th>expergiscor,</th>
<th>awaken,</th>
<th>experrectus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apparently from ex-per-REG, (rego).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fatisc,</th>
<th>Fat,</th>
<th>fatiscor,</th>
<th>am weary,</th>
<th>fessus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nancisc,</th>
<th>Nanc,</th>
<th>nanciscor,</th>
<th>get,</th>
<th>(nanetus), nactus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| X |
IRREGULAR VERBS.

OBLIVISC, OBLIV, obliviscor, forget, (oblivitus), oblitas. Probably akin to oblino, obliterate.

PACISC, PAC, paciscor, bargain, pactus.

PROFICISC, PROFEC, proficiscor, proceed, professus.

From pro-FAC, (facio), I begin to make forward.

ULCISC, ULC, ulciscor, avenge, (ulcitus), ulitus.

Obs. Though all these verbs have an inceptive form, in some of them the inceptive meaning can hardly be traced.

Some verbs in io, which have a double crude-form, are conjugated like the consonant conjugation in some parts even of the Present and its derivatives.

Rapiο, (RAPI) or (RAP).

rapio, rapis, rapit, rapiam, &c.
rapimus, rapitis, rapiunt.
rapiēbam, &c. Imperfect. rapērem, &c.
rapiam, rapies, &c. Future.

Imperative.

S. rapē, rapito, P. rapīte, rapitore, rapiunto.
rapito, rapiunt.

Infinitive. Participle.
rapēre. Present. rapiens.

In the same way are conjugated capio, cupio, sapio, facio, jacio, sodio, fugio, pario, quatio.

Some Deponents are conjugated in the same way.

Morior, I die, (mori) or (mor).

morior, morēris (re), moritur, moriar, -aris, &c.
morimur, morimini, moriuntur.
moriēbar, &c. Imperfect. morērer, morerēris, &c.
moriar, moriēris, &c. Future.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

**Imperative.**

S. morēre, morētor,  
P. morimini, moriminar,  
moriuntor.

**Infinitive.**

mori.  
Present.  moriens.  
Future.  morīturus.

**Participles.**

In the same way are conjugated gradior, patior, orior, (Inf. orīri).

**CLASS II.**

**Verbs irregular in particular Tenses or Persons.**

1. Possum, (I am able).

Obs. Possum is compounded of potis, able, and sum, I am. Thus, (pot-sum), possum, the (i) being changed into s in the tenses and persons which begin with s; and some tenses being contracted; as, potessem, possem.

**Indicative.**

Present. possum, potes, potest, possim, possess, possit, possimus, potestis, possunt. possimus, possitis, possunt.

Imperfect. potēram, poteras, &c.

Future. possem, posses, &c.

**Subjunctive.**

Perfect. potui, potuisti, &c. potuerim, potueris, &c.

Pluperfect. potueram, potueras, &c. potuissem, potuisse, &c.

Future-perfect. potuero, potueris, &c.

(No Imperative.)

**Infinitive.**

- Participle.

possē, (potesse). Present. potens.

potuisse. Perfect. —
IRREGULAR VERBS.

Volo, I am willing, has two compounds; nolo, I am unwilling, from non-volo; and malo, I am more willing, from (magis volo) mavolo, mālo.


Indicative. Subjunctive.

Present.
vŏlo, nolo, malo, vēlim, nolim, malim,
vis, noneis, mavis, velis, nolis, malis,
vult, nonvult, mavult, velit, nolit, malit,
volumus, nolūmus, malūmus, velimus, nolimus, malimus,
vultis, nonvultis, mavultis, velitis, nolitis, malītis,
volut. nolunt. malunt. velint. nolint. malint.

Imperfect.
volebam. nolebam. malebam. vellem. nollem. mallem.

Future.
volam. nolam. malam.

Perfect.
volui. nolui. malui. voluerim. noluerim. maluerim.

Pluperfect.
volueram. nolueram. malueram. voluissem. noluissem. maluissem.

Future-perfect.
voluero. noluero. maluero.

Imperative.

(wanting) S. noli, nolito, P. nolite, nolitote, (wanting) nolito, nolunto.

Infinitive. Participles.
velle. nolle. malle. Pres. volens. nolens. (wanting)
voluisse. noluisse. maluisse. Perf. — — —
IRREGULAR VERBS.


Edo is conjugated regularly; but besides the regular form, it has some parts similar to the tenses of sum.

**Indicative.** Present. **Subjunctive.** Imperfect.

edo, edis, edit, edērem, ederes, ederet,
(or es, est,) (or essem, esses, esset,)
edimus, editis, edunt. ederemus, ederetis, ederent,
(or essemus, essetis, essent.)

**Imperative.**

S. ede, edito. P. edite, editote. edere (or esse).
(or es, esto) (or este, estote).


Fero is irregular in some tenses of the Active and Passive voices, from the omission of the connecting vowel in some of the personal Affixes.

**Active.**

**Indicative.** Present.

fero, fers, fert, feror, ferris(e), fertur,
ferimus, fertis, ferunt. ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.

**Subjunctive.**

ferrem, ferres, &c. Imperf. ferrar, ferrēris, &c.

**Imperative.**

—fer, ferto, —ferre, fertor,

ferto, fertor,

—ferte, fertote, ferimini, ferimino,

ferunto. feruntor.

**Infinitive.**

ferre. Present. ferri.

The other tenses are conjugated regularly. The Perfect tuli, and Supine latum, seem to be borrowed from tollo.
7. *Fio, (fī), I am made, or I become.*

*Fio* is used as the Passive of *facio*, from which it takes the participles *factus* and *faciendus*.

The compounds of *facio*, when they change the *a* into *i*, are regular in their Passive; as, *inficio*, *inficior*. Other compounds use *fio*; as, *calfacio*, *calīio*.

*Fio* is conjugated regularly, according to the I—conjugation, except that the Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive, have the connecting vowel (*e*) without contraction.

**Subjunctive. Imperfect.**

*fīerem*, *fīeres*, &c.

**Infinitive. Present.**

*fīeri*.

*Infīt*, he begins, is used only in the 3rd person.

8. *Eo, (ī), I go.*

The crude-form of *eo* (ī) becomes (ē) in some of the tenses, derived from the Present.

**Indicative.**

*eo*, *is*, *it*, Present.

*imus*, *itis*, *eunt*.

**Subjunctive.**

*eam*, *eas*, &c.

*ibam*, *ibas*, &c. Imperfect.

*irem*, *ires*, &c.

*ibo*, *ibis*, &c. Future.

**Imperative.**

S. *i*, *ito*, *ito*,

P. *ite*, *itote*, *eunto*.

**Infinitive.**

*ire*.

**Participle.**

*iens*, (euntis).

The Perfect *ivi* and its derivatives are regular; Supine, *itum*.

Like *eo* are conjugated *queo*, I can; and *nequeo*, I cannot.
DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs may be divided into three classes. I. Verbs which are defective in the Supine, Perfect, or Present.

II. Verbs which are defective in other tenses or persons.

III. Verbs which are defective in all persons except the third singular, and are called Impersonal.

CLASS I.

Defective in the Supine, Perfect, or Present.

1. Defective in the Supine.

Almost all neuter verbs ending in \( \infty \) in the Present. Also, *abnuo*, I refuse; and other compounds of (nuo).

- *arceo*, drive away.
- *compesco*, restrain.
- *deyo*, live.
- *disco*, learn.
- *dispesco*, separate.
- *lambo*, lick (touch gently).
- *lingo*, lick.
- *luo*, pay.

- *metuo*, fear.
- *mico*, glitter.
- *oleo*, smell.
- *parco*, spare.
- *posco*, demand.
- *psallo*, play.
- *raucio*, am hoarse.
- *refello*, refute.

*Rudo*, bray.
*Sapio*, taste.
*Scabo*, scratch.
*Sido*, settle.
*Sisto*, stop.
*Sterio*, snore.
*Timeo*, fear.
*Urgio*, urge.
*Volo*, will.

Lines for memory.

*Posco*, *compesco*, *dispesco*, *raucio*, *disco*,
*Abnuo*, *lingo*, *luo*, *metuo*, *lambo*, *arceo*, *sido*.
*Parco*, *oleo*, *timeo*, *scabo*, *dego*, *psallo*, *refello*.
*Sterio*, *mico*, *sapio*, *rudo*, *urgeo*, *sisto*, *voloque*.

*Obs.* The compounds of *arceo*, *lingo*, *luo*, and *oleo*, have Supines, though the simple verbs have not. The compounds of *cado*, fall, have no Supine, except *occido* and *recido*.

2. Defective in the Perfect and Supine.

Almost all *Inseptives*.

All *Desideratives*, except *parturio*, am in labour, and *euroio*, am hungry.
Also, ambigo, doubt.  glisco, increase.  plecto, strike.
aveo, desire.  liveo, am livid.  polleo, am strong.
fatisco, crack.  mareo, grieve.  salio, salt.
ferio, strike.  nideo, shine.  temno, despise.
ferocio, am bold.  pavio, beat or pave.  vado, go.
furo, rage.  

Lines for memory.

Plecto, cum livro, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco,
Salio, cum pavio, ferioque, ferocio, temno,
Mareo, sic aveo, furo, nideo, polleo, vado.

Obs. The compounds of temno and vado have a Perfect and Supine.

3. Defective in the Present.

Cæpi, I began, cæptum, (CÆP).
Memini, I remember, (MEN); root seen also in mens, mind;
reminiscor, I call to mind, &c.—hence memini, "I have
fixed in my mind."
Odi, I hate, (OB), apparently with the meaning of a Present
tense; no Supine, but Fut. Part. osurus.

These three verbs have all the derivatives of the Perfect; and
memini has also an Imperative, memento

CLASS II.

Defective in other tenses and persons.

1. Aio, (AI), I say.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aio, aís, āit,</td>
<td>Present: — áias,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— — āunt.</td>
<td>áiat, — — āiant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aiebam, aiebas, &amp;c.</td>
<td>Imperfect: — āit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— —</td>
<td>Perfect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Inquam, (INQUI), I say.

Inquam is used only between the words quoted, and never
stands at the beginning of a sentence.
DELECTIVE VERBS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inquam, inquis, inquit,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>inquiias, inquiit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquimus, inquistis, inquiunt.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>inquiatis, inquiunt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquiebam, inquiebas, &amp;c.</td>
<td>Imperfect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— inquiies, inquiet.</td>
<td>Future.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— inquisti, inquit.</td>
<td>Perfect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— inquistis.</td>
<td>Imperative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

S. inque, inquito.  P. inquite, —

3. Fari, (FA), to speak.

Fari is used only by poets, and principally as follows:—

Fatur, he speaks; fare, speak thou; fatus, having spoken.

Fatus, with sum, eram, &c., makes the Perfect and its derivative:

4. apagē, begone.  5. salvē, salvēte (Inf. salvēre), hail.
6. cedo, cedīte, give, tell.  7. quēso, quēsūmus, I beseech you.

CLASS III.

Impersonal Verbs.

Impersonal verbs never have a person, or agent, for their subject, and are found only in the 3rd person singular. Thus,

Tædet, (TÆDE), it wearies.

Pres. tædet.  Imp. tædebat.  Fut. tædebit.

Impersonal verbs have no Imperative, and generally want the participles and gerunds.

Many verbs, which have all the persons, are occasionally used as impersonals in the 3rd person, with rather a different meaning; as, consō, I stand together; constat, it is evident.
CLASSES OF VERBS.

1. Frequentatives. To do frequently, or habitually.

-ito (ita); as, mitto, send, miss-ito.
-o (a); as, pello, drive, puls-o.

Commonly formed from the Supine; but not always; as, ago, ag-ito.
The shorter form is less emphatic.

Obs. 1. A few frequentatives end in -icu-; as, mitto, miss-iculo; and in -ico; as, sodio, dig, sod-ico, nudge.

Obs. 2. All frequentatives belong to the A—conjugation.

2. Inceptives. To begin to do; to grow towards a state.

-sco (sc); as, arco, I am dry, are-sco; dormio, I sleep, ob-dormi-sco.

Formed generally from a primitive verb, but not always; as, puer, boy, puere-sco, grow to boyhood.

Obs. 1. A few inceptives end in -utio, or -ulto; as, oculus, blind, occutio, or occulto. Also in -esso; as, capio, take, cap-essio, undertake.

Obs. 2. Some inceptives in form have lost their inceptive meaning; as, passo, feed; posco, demand.

Obs. 3. All inceptives in sco belong to the Consonant Conjugation; and the primitive verbs from which they are derived mostly belong to the E—conjugation.

3. Diminutives. To do slightly, or minutely.

-illo (illa); as, cantus, song, cantillo, hum.

Obs. All diminutives belong to the A—conjugation.

4. Desideratives. To desire or long to do.

-turio (turi); as, cena-turio, I want my supper, (cena).

Formed appropriately from the Future Participle; as, edo, eurus, erurio, want to eat.

Obs. All desideratives belong to the I—conjugation.

5. Verbs derived from nouns, and expressing their nature.

(a) To be what the noun denotes.

-co (e); as, flos, flower, flor-co, am in bloom; albus, white, alb-co, I am white.

(b) To do what the noun denotes.

-o (a); as, fraud, fraud, fraud-o, defraud; albus, alb-o, whiten.
PARTICLES.

Particles are Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and Interjections.

I. Adverbs.

1. Adverbs are used to denote the manner in which an action is performed, or in which a state exists: as, scribit bene, he writes well; diu dormit, he sleeps long.

2. Adverbs are generally joined with verbs.

3. Adverbs, which are derived from adjectives, express the quality which the adjective describes.

4. Adverbs, which are derived from adjectives, admit of comparison.

5. The usual termination for the Comparative degree is ius; for the Superlative, issimè.

6. Adverbs follow, in their comparison, the forms and varieties of their respective adjectives.

7. A very few adverbs, not derived from adjectives, admit of comparison; as,

Sæpe, often, sæpius, sæpissime.
Diu, a long time, diutius, diutissime.
Satis, enough, satius.
Potius, rather, potissimum.

8. Adverbs not derived from adjectives may be divided into:

(a) Adverbs of quantity: as, parum, little; satis, enough; abunde, abundantly; nimis, too much.

(b) Of time: as, nunc, now; tunc, or tum, then; hodie, to-day; cras, to-morrow; heri, yesterday; jam, now; mane, in the morning.

(c) Of place: as, ubi, where; ibi, there; quo, whither; eo, thither; longe, afar; hic, here; huc, hither; hinc, hence.

(d) Of diversity: as, secus, otherwise.

(e) Of vicinity: as, prope, juxta, near.

(f) Of affirmation: as, ita, thus; sic, so; quidem, indeed; tam, so.

(g) Of negation: as, non, no; immo, nay.

(h) Of similarity: as, perinde, just as.
II. Conjunctions.

1. Conjunctions are used to connect together different words and sentences.

2. Conjunctions may be divided according to their signification into the following heads:—
   (a) Copulative, which connect objects that are to be considered conjointly: as, et, ac, que, atque, and; neque, nec, neither, nor; et—et, both—and.
   (b) Disjunctive, which connect objects that are to be considered separately: as, aut, vel, ve, or, either; sive, seu, whether; utrum—an, whether—or.
   (c) Comparative, expressing a comparison: as, ut, sicut, velut, as; quam, as; tanquam, quasi, ut si, as if, &c.
   (d) Admissive, expressing a concession: as, etsi, tametsi, quanquam, quamvis, licet, ut, although; quamlibet, as you please.
   (e) Conditional, expressing a condition: as, si, if; sin, but if; nisi, unless; dummodo, provided that.
   (f) Illative, expressing an inference: as, ergo, igitur, itaque, ideo, therefore; idcirco, propter ea, on this account; quare, quapropter, quamobrem, wherefore; unde, whence; proinde, then.
   (g) Causal, expressing a cause or reason: as, nam, enim, etenim, for; quia, quod, because; quoniam, quando, since; quippe, inasmuch as.
   (h) Intentional, expressing a purpose or object in view: as, ut, that; quo, in order that; ne, ut ne, lest, that not; neve, neu, nor, and lest; quominus, that not.
   (i) Adversative, expressing opposition: as, sed, autem, cæterum, but; at, atqui, but, however; attamen, but yet.
   (k) Temporal, expressing time: as, quum, quando, when; quam primum, ut primum, simul ac, simul, as soon as; postquam, after that; dum, whilst; donec, until.
   (l) Interrogative, simply expressing an interrogation: as, num, ne, an.
III. Prepositions.

1. Prepositions are usually placed before substantives to express the relations which they bear to other nouns or verbs.

2. The principal relations, which prepositions serve to express, are—

(a) Motion towards: ad, to; tenus, up to; erga, towards; versus, towards.

(b) Motion from: a, ab, abs, from; e, ex, out of; de, from.

(c) Precedence: ante, before; praed, before; pro, before; super, above; supra, above.

(d) Posteriority: post, after; pone, behind; infra, beneath; sub, under; subter, underneath; secundum (from sequor), following the course of.

(e) Conjunction: apud, with; cum, together with; penes, in the power of; coram, in the presence of; prope, near; circa or circum, around; circiter, about; juxta, near; propter, by, on account of.

(f) Opposition: adversus, against; contra, against; ob, opposite, on account of.

(g) Exclusion: absque, without; sine, without; extra, out of; clam, without the knowledge of.

(h) Inclusion: in, in, into; inter, between; intra, within.

(i) Transition: cis, citra, on this side; per, through; praeter, beyond; trans, across.

Obs. Many prepositions are occasionally used as adverbs, without governing any case.
Prepositions in Composition.

Prepositions in composition often change their final consonants, especially by assimilating them to the consonant which follows. [See Rules of Euphony.] The following particulars may be noticed.

1. *A, ab, abs.*— *A* is used before *m* and *v*; as, *a-mitto, a-verto:* *ab* before vowels, and *d, j, l, n, r, s;* as, *ab-eo, ab-duco, ab-jungo,* *ab-luo, ab-nuo, ab-ripio, ab-numo:* *abs* before *c* and *t; as, *abs-condo, abs-traho.* *Ab* becomes *au* before *f;* as, *au-fero.*

2. *Ad.*— *Ad* assimilates its *d* to the following consonant, except when it comes before *b, j, m,* and *v;* as, *ad-bibo, ad-jungo, ad-mitto, ad-verto;* but *ac-curro, ad-duco, afero, ag-gero, al-ludo, an-nuo, appono, ac-quirio, ar-ripio, as-sentio, at-traho.*

3. *Cum.*— *Com* is used for *cum* in composition, and remains unchanged before *b, m,* and *p;* as, *com-bibo, com-mitto, com-pono:* the *m* is assimilated before the liquids *l, n, r;* as, *col-ludo, con-nireo,* *cor-ripio:* the *m* is changed into *n* before other consonants; as, *con-dudo, con-duco, confero, con-gero, con-ludo,* *con-nuo, con-quito, con-tingo, con-verto.*

*Com,* and *circum,* both drop the *m* before vowels; as, *co-eo,* *circue-eo.*

4. *E, ex.*— *Ex* is used before vowels, and *c, p, q, t;* as, *ex-eo,* *ex-cudo, ex-pono, ex-quirio, ex-traho:* *e* is used before the other consonants; as, *e-bibo, e-duco:* before *f* the *x* is assimilated; as, *effero.*

5. *In.*— *In* changes the *n* into *m* before *b and p;* as, *im-bibo,* *im-pono:* the *n* is assimilated before *l, m, n, r;* as, *il-lido, im-mitto,* *in-nuo, ir-ruo.*

6. *Ob.*— *Ob* assimilates the *b* before *c, f, and p,* and loses it before *m;* as, *oc-curro, ofero, op-pono, o-mitto.*

7. *Per,* and *inter,* sometimes assimilate the *r* before *l;* as, *pellicio, inteligo.*

8. *Sub.*— *Sub* assimilates the *b* before *c, f, g, m, p, q,* and *r;* as, *suc-cedo, suf-ficio, sug-gero, sum-moveo, sup-pono, suc-cudo,* sur-ripio: the *b* is sometimes retained before *m and r;* as, *sub-mitto, sub-rideo.*


10. Some prepositions ending in *a* have a corresponding form in *o,* which is used only in composition; thus,

*circa, citra, contra, extra, intra,* — *ultra.*

*circo, citro, contro, extra, intro, retro, ultro.*

Thus *contro-versia, (intro-ervium) introsum, id-circo,* &c.
Inseparable Particles.

Some particles are never found except in composition.

1. An, am, amb, (Greek ἀμφὶ), on both sides—hence always implying something twofold; as, an-cepse, an-icipitis, doubtful, [having two heads]. An is used before c, f, and q; as, an-cepse, an-fractus, an-guiro: am is used before p; as, am-plector: amb before vowels; as, amb-io.

2. Di, dis, [duo, two], asunder,—implying division or separation; as, di-gero, I arrange. Di is used before g, l, m, n, r, sp, and v; as, di-gero, di-ligo, di-minuo, di-numero, di-ripio, di-spergo, di-vero. Dis is used before c, j, p, q, s, and t; as, dis-curro, dis-jungo, dis-pono, dis-guiro, dis-sentio, dis-traho. The s is assimilated before f; as, dif-fero: di is sometimes used before j, and dis sometimes before r; as, di-judico, dis-rumpor.

3. In, (Greek ἡ, ἢ), negation; as, im-purus, impure: in is used generally with adjectives, and implies the opposite of the simple word. The n is changed in the same way as that of in the preposition; as, im-purus, in-nobilus.

4. Ne, (Greek νέ), negation; as, ne-fas, wickedness, [not-lawfulness].

5. Re, red, back, or again; as, red-do, I restore, [give again]. The d is seldom retained except before vowels; as, red-co, re-mitto, red-do.

Obs. Such words as relliquia, re tolli, &c., are probably from relliquia, red-tuli.

6. Ve, badly,—hence sometimes negation; as, ve-grandis, clumsy, [awkwardly great]; ve-sanus, insane.

IV. Interjections.

Interjections are sounds uttered to express a sudden emotion.

1. Joy: io! ha! evoe!
3. Astonishment: o! en! ecce! behold! hem! ah!
4. Calling: heus! hark'ye! ohe! ehodum! eia!
5. Praise: euge! bravo!

Many other words are occasionally used as interjections: as, pax! malum! perii!
CLASSES OF PARTICLES.

I. Adverbs.

1. Expressing the qualities of Adjectives.

-è ; as, altus, high, alt-è; tener, tender, tener-è.
   Formed always from adjectives whose crude-form ends in (o) and (a). The adverbs seem to come from the Dat. or Abl. feminine. (Compare the Greek adverbs in ἐ, as, ὑπ' on foot.)

-o ; as, falsus, false, fals-ò; creber, frequent, crebr-ò.
   Formed from the same sort of adjectives as the preceding. The adverb seems to come from the Dat. or Abl. masculine.

-ter ; as, mollis, soft, moll-ter; memor, mindful, mem-ter.
   Formed from adjectives whose crude-form ends in (i) or a consonant; in the latter case (i) is often inserted as a connecting vowel; but when it ends in (r), er only is added; as, sapiens, (SAPIENT), sapient-er.

Obs. 1. Some adjectives in us have an adverb in ter or è; as, durus, hard, duriter, and durè; but the form in ter is mostly used in older writers.

Obs. 2. Several adverbs are only the neuters of adjectives; as, nimius, too much, nimum; facilis, easy, facilié.

2. Not expressing the qualities of Adjectives.

-ies, (number); as, dec-ies, ten times; tot-ies, so many times.
-im, (by way of); as, furt-im, stealthily, (by way of theft); curs-im, hastily, (by way of running).
   Formed like the Supine, or Perf. Part. passive; and sometimes seems to imply division; as, viritim, man by man.

-itus, (origin); as, cel-itus, from heaven; antiqu-itus, from antiquity.

-isper, (during); as, paul-isper, for a short time.
-fariam, (in how many ways); as, multi-fariam, in many ways.

N.B. Several others cannot be classed under distinct heads.

3. Taken from the cases of Nouns.

The different cases of nouns have in many instances been used as adverbs, besides those forms mentioned above; and some have by custom almost lost their meaning as nouns. Thus,
II. Pronominal Particles.

A number of particles are formed from pronouns, and are sometimes used both as adverbs and conjunctions.

1. Single Particles.

(a) Formed from the demonstratives *hic, iste, ille*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particles</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>hic</em></td>
<td>(at a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>istuc</em></td>
<td>(to a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Abl.)</td>
<td><em>hinc</em></td>
<td>(from a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>istac</em></td>
<td>(by what way)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. M.</td>
<td><em>ho</em></td>
<td>(used in compounds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. F.</td>
<td><em>hac</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Formed from the Pronouns *quis or qui*, *is*, and *aliquis*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particles</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inter. or Rel.</td>
<td><em>quis, or qui</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonst.</td>
<td>(is.)</td>
<td>(aliquis.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>(e)ubi, iber</td>
<td>(at a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>eb</em></td>
<td>(to a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Abl.)</td>
<td>(e)unde, inde</td>
<td>(from a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>ed</em></td>
<td>(by what way)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. M.</td>
<td><em>eu, eo</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. F.</td>
<td><em>quam, or qua, ea</em></td>
<td>(used in compounds)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obs. 1. The *c* or *q* is dropped in *ubi* and *unde*, except when a vowel precedes; as, *ali-cubi*, *si-cunde*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quo, eo, ea*, &c., and also *ho, hac, &c.*, have lost the final *m* which appears in the correlative *quam*. These forms are seen in such compounds as *quo-circa, qua-propter, (ho-erversum) horsum, post-ea*, &c.

Obs. 3. The forms *hinc, unde*, &c., are peculiar. They appear to be ablatives both from their meaning—from a place—and from their following the prepositions *ab* and *de*; as, *ab hinc, deinde*. The forms *illuc* and *istuc* are sometimes found without the *c*, and then appear as *illim, istim*.

Obs. 4. From *quis* and *qui* some other particles are formed; *quum, quando, when; quia, because; cur, why; quam, how*.  

L 2
2. Compound Particles.

(a) Doubled Particles; as, quanquam, although; ubi ubi, wheresoever; unde unde, whencesoever; quo quo, whithersoever.

Ob. 1. The doubling of a Particle produces an union of certainty, with indefiniteness;—it implies that a thing is certainly one of a given class, but leaves it indefinite as to which one it is. Thus quam, how,—quanquam, be it how it may; implying that it certainly is in some way; unde, whence,—unde unde, be it whence it may.

Ob. 2. In the same manner is to be explained the doubled pronoun quis quis, be he who he may; quis quis, therefore, may be said to mean—this quis, or that quis, or the other quis; i.e. some one indefinite individual out of the number. And so also with the doubled Particles.

(b) Particles with final affixes.

A great many single particles are compounded by having the following affixes added to them.

(Expressing universality).
- libet; as, quo libet, whithersoever it pleases you.
- vis; — qua vis, in any way you wish.
- que; — ubi que, every where.
- cunque; — unde cunque, whencesoever.

Ob. Libet and vis are merely the verbs “it pleases,” and “you wish.” Que is “and,” so that ubi que seems to mean, this where, and that where, and the other where; i.e. every where. In the same manner other particles and pronouns compounded with que, may be explained; as, undique, quisique, eterque, &c.: cunque is a compound of cum and que, in the manner just described, and signifies, “at all times.”

(Expressing indefiniteness).
- piam; as, qua piam, in any way.
- quam; — un quam, at any time.

(Expressing emphasis).
- dem; as, ibi dem, in that very, or some place.
- nam? — ubi nam, where, I pray.

Ob. All the above affixes are found also with Pronouns; as, quilibet, quis nam.

(Prepositions put after their cases).
- circa; as, quo circa, wherefore.
- propter; — hac propter, on this account.
- tenus; — qua tenus, inasmuch as.
- versum; — (quo versum) quorum, to what end.
- usque; — huc usque, as far as this.
(c) Particles with initial affixes.

The following are mostly mere prepositions set before particles in their usual sense.

\[
\begin{align*}
ab &; &\text{as, ab-hinc, from hence.} \\
ad &; &\text{ad-eo, up to that point—to that degree.} \\
ante &; &\text{ante-hac, before this.} \\
de &; &\text{de-inde, next, (from thence).} \\
inter &; &\text{inter-ea, in the mean time.} \\
post &; &\text{post-hac, after this.} \\
ne &; &\text{ne-quo, lest anywhere.} \\
si &; &\text{si-cubi, if anywhere.}
\end{align*}
\]

N.B. The student will do well to pay much attention to the whole subject of the Latin Pronominal Particles, and to make out a complete list of them, arranged in a double classification; placing the roots in a horizontal line, and the terminations in a perpendicular one; to show at once their derivation and formation.

---

COMPOUND WORDS.

1. The Latin language does not abound in compound words, like the Greek.

2. Compounds are either parathetic or synthetic.

3. In parathetic compounds, both words retain their form and meaning (subject only to the Rules of Euphony), though they are written as one word; thus, \textit{ab} and \textit{duco}, \textit{abduco}; \textit{cum} and \textit{frango}, \textit{confringo}.

\textit{Obs.} Almost all Latin compounds are of this class; and they are principally adjectives and verbs compounded with prepositions, or inseparable particles. Yet a few such compounds have a noun for the first word; as, \textit{republica}, republic, Gen. \textit{republicae}; \textit{jusjurandum}, an oath, \textit{jurisjurandi}.

4. In synthetic compounds the first word loses all inflexion, and the last word often takes a form which it could not have out of composition; as, from \textit{caleo} and \textit{facio}, \textit{calfacio}, I make hot; from \textit{male} and \textit{dico}, \textit{maledicus}, slanderous.

\textit{Obs.} There are comparatively very few Latin compounds of this class: when the first word is a noun, it generally has (i) for a connecting vowel; as, \textit{velum}, a sail, and \textit{volo}, I fly, \textit{velivolus}. 
ROOTS.

1. A Root is that part which remains after taking away from a whole family of kindred words all the parts which are different in each.

2. The Root represents the leading idea, or general meaning, which runs through all the kindred words.

3. The different modifications of that general meaning are expressed by the different affixes, which distinguish each complete word from another. [See Introduction, No. 4.]

4. The student will do well to trace some of the most important Latin Roots, and to arrange their derivations; distinguishing between the Primary, Secondary, and Tertiary formations, &c.

Families of words may be arranged as follows:—

Root AC (point).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary</th>
<th>Secondary</th>
<th>Tertiary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC-us (needle)</td>
<td>{ ACu-la (dim.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACu-arius (needleman).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACu-leus (sting).</td>
<td>{ ACule-olis (dim.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACule-atus (having a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sting).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC-uo (sharpen)</td>
<td>{ ACu-tus (sharp).</td>
<td>{ ACut-ulus (dim.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACut-ë (acutely).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACu-men (point, acuteness)</td>
<td>ACumin-o (make pointed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACumin-alus (pointed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC-ies (edge)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC-so (am sour)</td>
<td>{ ACes-so (grow sour).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACes-tum (vinegar).</td>
<td>ACet-abulum (vinegar-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(dim.).</td>
<td>cruet).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC-idus (sour)</td>
<td>{ ACid-ë (sourly).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACid-ës (sourness).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACri-ter (sharply).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACri-ës (sharpness).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC-er (sharp)</td>
<td>{ ACeri-udo (harsh-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACeri-monia ness).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACeri-bus (bitter),</td>
<td>{ ACerb-ë (bitterly).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACerb-ës (bitterness).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACerb-ëdudo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The list might be increased by taking in the compounds exacuo, &c.
I. CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

1. Every sentence contains one or more propositions.

2. A Proposition consists of three parts, the Subject, Predicate, and Copula.

3. The Subject is the thing or person spoken of in the sentence.

4. The Predicate is that which is said of the subject.

5. The Copula is that which connects the subject and predicate together: as, Alexander est victor, Alexander is victorious. Alexander, the subject; victor, the predicate; est, the copula.

6. The Subject is generally a substantive or personal pronoun, with which any other words may be joined to explain or qualify its meaning.

7. The Predicate may be an adjective or verb, as well as a substantive, with which any other words, that the sense requires, may be joined.

8. The simple Copula is the verb est, is; but when any other verb is used, it contains the Copula joined with the Predicate: as, Alexander vincit, Alexander conquers. Vincit contains the Copula and Predicate together, being nearly equivalent to est victor.

Obs. Every sentence may be thus divided; since even an interroga tion is only a proposition, the Predicate of which is doubted or unknown, and is therefore expressed as a question; thus quis est ille? who is that man? is equivalent to ille est—quis?—that man is—who?—where ille is the Subject, quis the Predicate.
9. Propositions are either Dependent or Independent.

10. An Independent proposition is one which can stand alone, and does not depend upon any other word or clause.

   Obs. 1. Every perfect sentence contains at least one independent proposition.

   Obs. 2. The verb which contains the copula of an independent proposition, is called the principal verb in the sentence, and is always in the Indicative Mood.

11. A Dependent proposition is one which cannot stand alone, but is joined to the Subject or Predicate of some other proposition.

   Obs. 1.—When a writer records the words of another not as they were actually spoken, but in the way of narrative, it is called the oratio obliqua; as, Dicit "se nihil habere cur irasceretur," he said that he had no reason for being angry.

   Obs. 2.—Every proposition in the oratio obliqua is necessarily dependent, because the whole sentence depends on dicit, or some such word, expressed or understood.

12. The Object of a verb is either immediate or remote.

13. The Immediate Object is the thing produced, or acted upon, by the action of the verb; as, Facio hoc, I do this; Amo illum, I love him.

14. The Remote Object is the thing or person for which the action is performed, or towards which it is directed: as, Dat mihi, he gives to me.

15. The Immediate Object may be found by asking the question whom? or what? with the verb; as, Whom do I love?—Amo illum, I love him.

16. The Remote Object may be found by asking the question to (or for) whom?—or what? with the verb; as, to whom does he give?—dat mihi, he gives to me.
II. CONCORDS.

There are three kinds of grammatical concord or agreement:—

1. Between the Subject and its Verb.
2. Between the Substantive and its Adjective.

First Concord—The Subject and Verb.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in number and person; as,
   
   *Sera nunquam est ad bonos mores via,*
   
   the way to good manners is never too late.

2. When the subject is a noun of multitude, the verb may be in the plural; as,
   
   *Pars abierunt,*
   
   a part have gone away.

3. Two or more subjects in the singular will require the verb to be in the plural; as,
   
   *Rex et regina sunt beati,*
   
   the king and queen are happy.

   *Obs. 1.* When *et* or *tum,* both, is repeated, the verb agrees with the last subject only; as, *Et pater, et mater mortua est,* both my father, and my mother is dead. *Tum aetas viresque, tum gloria annuim stimulabat,* both his age and strength, and also glory roused his mind.

   *Obs. 2.* Sometimes the verb agrees with the last subject, without the repetition of *et* or *tum,* especially in things without life; as, *Tempus necessitasque postulat,* time and necessity demands it.

4. If the subjects are of different persons, the verb will agree with the 1st rather than the 2nd, and with the 2nd rather than the 3rd; as,

   *Si tu et Tullia valetis,*
   
   if you and Tullia are well.

   *Obs. 1.* The verb sometimes agrees with the nearest subject only; as, *Vos ipse et senatus restitit,* you yourselves and the senate remained.

   *Obs. 2.* The pronouns *ego* and *nus* are of the 1st person, *tu* and *vos* of the 2nd; all other nouns are of the 3rd person, except where one of these pronouns is understood; as, *Consul dixi;* i.e. *(Ego) consul,* I, the consul, said.
5. Sometimes a verb or sentence is the subject of a verb; as,

*Me juvat ire sub umbras,*

it delights me to go under the shades.

6. The subject of a verb is not expressed—

(a) When it is a personal pronoun without any emphasis; as, *damnnavistis,* you have condemned; but *vos damnnavistis,* you have condemned; i. e. you and no one else.

(b) When it is some unknown or imaginary agent, and the action only is regarded; as, *tonat,* it thunders.

*Obs.* The verb *sum* is often omitted, especially in proverbial expressions; as, *rari quippe boni,* good men are scarce.

7. The Subject of an impersonal verb is either a sentence, or a substantive not expressed; as,

*Spectat ad omnes bene vivere,*

to live well is the duty of all.

*Tœdet me vita,* i. e. *possessio vita,*

life wearies me.

8. The verb sometimes agrees with the *Predicate* of the proposition instead of the subject; as,

*Pectus quoque robora fiunt,*

his breast also becomes oak.

*Obs.* This is sometimes, though rarely, the case in English; as, *The wages of sin is death.*

9. The Subject may always be found by asking the question *who?* or *what?* with the verb; as,

*Me juvat,* it delights me; *(what delights me?)* *ire sub umbras,* to go under the shades.

**SECOND CONCORD—The Substantive and Adjective.**

1. Adjectives, pronouns, and participles, agree with their Substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

*Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cycno,*

a rare bird in the earth, and very much like a black swan.
OBS. 1. An adjective is sometimes an *epithet*, and stands in the same part of the proposition as its substantive; as, *viri boni moriuntur*, good men die; but sometimes the adjective is a *predicate*, while its substantive is the subject of a proposition; as, *viri sunt boni*, the men are good.

OBS. 2. When an adjective is a *predicate*, it is sometimes in the *neuter* gender, though its substantive is *mas.* or *fem.*; as, *dulce satis humor*, moisture is sweet (a sweet thing) to the sown fields.

2. Two or more *substantives* in the singular require their *adjective* to be in the plural; as,

\[ Pater et mater morientes dixerunt, \]

*his* father and *mother* when dying said.

OBS. 1. If all the substantives are of the same gender, the plural adjective takes that gender; as, *Pater et filius cari sunt*, the father and son are dear.

OBS. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, and denote living things, the masculine gender is to be preferred to the feminine, and the feminine to the *neuter*; as, *Rex et regina sunt beati*, the king and queen are happy.

OBS. 3. If the things are without life, and of different genders, the *neuter* gender is to be used; as, *Labor et voluptas dissimilia natura*, labour and pleasure unlike in their nature.

OBS. 4. If the things are without life, and of the same gender, the *neuter* is *sometimes* used; as, *Arcus et calami sunt bona*, the bow and arrows are good.

OBS. 5. If some of the things are living, and some without life, the adjective is either in the *neuter*, or in the gender of the living thing; as, *Patria et cives cara sunt*, our country and fellow-citizens are dear. *Jane fac externos pacem pacisque ministros*, O Janus, make peace, and the ministers of peace, eternal.

OBS. 6. Sometimes the adjective takes the gender of the word nearest to it; as, *Tibi omnium salus, liber, fortuna, carissimae sunt*, the health, children, and fortunes of all are most dear to you.

3. An *adjective* sometimes agrees with a verb, or sentence, and is then put in the *neuter* gender; as,

\[ Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori, \]

to die for one’s country is sweet and honourable.

OBS. A demonstrative pronoun always agrees with the substantive in the predicate, whatever may be the foregoing object to which it refers; as, *Idem velle atque idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est*, to like and dislike the same thing, *that* in short is firm friendship: —where *ea* (not *id*) is used.
4. An Adjective is often used alone, a Substantive being understood, from which it takes its gender; as,

Mortalis, a mortal (homo understood).

Dextra, the right hand (manus understood).

Obs. The adjective placed alone will very commonly be in the neuter, negotium, a thing, being understood.

**THIRD CONCORD—The Antecedent and Relative.**

The Antecedent is a substantive in a preceding clause, which is understood, but seldom expressed, with the Relative.

1. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

Deus est, qui nos creavit,

it is God, who created us.

Obs. The relative, having the nature of an adjective, follows many of the same rules in its *gender* and *number*; thus,

(a) It is in the *Plural* number when there are several antecedents; and its gender is then determined by the rules of adjectives.

(b) It sometimes agrees with a verb, or sentence, and is then neuter.

2. A Relative sometimes agrees with a substantive in its own predicate, instead of the Antecedent; as,

Hominès suentur illum globum quæ terra dictur,

men regard that globe which is called the earth.

Obs. 1. When the Relative and Antecedent are in the same case, the Antecedent may be omitted, but never the Relative; as, Qui bene vivit, beatè vivit. (He) who lives well, lives happily.

Obs. 2. Ordinal numbers, comparatives, and superlatives, are never followed by a Relative; as, Primus sentio, (not primus sum qui), I am the first who perceive it. Illum habeo fidelissimum, (not fidelissimus est quem), he is the most faithful man that I have.

3. The *case* of the Relative is determined by the words in its own clause, and not by the Antecedent; as,
NOMINATIVE CASE.

Ille, qui nos creavit, cujus sumus, cui parent omnia, quem non cernimus oculis, a quo tamen pendemus, aeternus est,
He who created us, whose we are, to whom all things obey, whom we see not with our eyes, upon whom however we depend, is eternal.

Obs. 1. The Antecedent is sometimes placed in the same clause, or even in the same case, as the Relative; as, Quas ad me dedisti litteras, usus sum, I used the letters which you sent me; urbem quam statuo vestra est, the city which I am building is yours.

Obs. 2. Hence such expressions as, Quae tua est virtus, expugnabis, such is your valour, you will conquer; for virtute quae tua est.

Obs. 3. The Relative with est, or sunt, is sometimes used as an indefinite pronoun, and is equivalent to quidam, some one; as, Sunt quibus unus opus est, to some it is their only work.

III. SUBSTANTIVES.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

1. The Subject of a verb is put in the Nominative case; as,

Turba ruit,
a crowd rushes.

Cecinere poëtae,
poets have sung.

Obs.—The Infinitive Mood may have its Subject in other cases besides the Nominative.

2. The noun in the predicate is in the same case as the subject, when it is required to complete the meaning of the verb; as,

Romulus erat rex,
Romulus was king.

3. Verbs which require a noun to complete their meaning are—

(a) Verbs of existence; as, sum, fio, existo.
(b) Verbs denoting "to be named or called;" as, dicor, vocor, nuncupor.
(c) Verbs denoting "to be chosen or elected;" as, creor, eligor, designor.
SYNTAX.

(d) Verbs denoting "to seem, or be thought;" as, videor, habeo, existimor.

Obs. Active verbs, denoting any kind of causation, take a double accusative, the latter of which is the predicate of the former, esse, to be, being understood; as, facio te judicem, I make you judge; i.e. esse judicem.

4. When a substantive is used to explain or describe another, it is put in the same case; as,

Effodiuntur opes irritamenta malorum,
riches, the incentives to vice, are dug out of the earth.

Obs. The substantive is then said to be put in opposition.

THE OBLIQUE CASES.

General Observations.

Obs. 1. Each of the Oblique cases has an appropriate force and meaning of its own; and when any one of them is used, it is not because the word which is said to govern it has any peculiar affinity to that case, but because the meaning intended to be expressed requires that particular case to be employed. Students should therefore mark not only what case a word governs, but what it is which is put in that case.

Obs. 2. The Genitive in its primary meaning appears to denote an object to which anything belongs. Hence it signifies—the possessor—the whole from which a part is taken—then the quality which marks the class to which anything belongs—and the thing which gives its character to an object or feeling.

Obs. 3. The Dative in its primary meaning appears to denote the remote object of an action—the thing or person to whom something is given. Hence it signifies—the receiver—the object towards which anything is directed—the object to which anything is near or united.

Obs. 4. The Accusative in its primary meaning appears to denote the immediate object of an action—whether it be (a) a thing produced by the action; or (b) a previously existing object immediately affected by the action. Hence the Accusative is used with transitive verbs.

Obs. 5. The Ablative in its primary meaning appears to denote an object from which something proceeds. Hence it signifies—the agent—the cause or instrument—the price—the thing of which any one is full or empty.
THE GENITIVE CASE.

The use of the Genitive may be divided into the following heads:—

1. The Genitive of the Possessor.
2. The Genitive of Participation.
3. The Genitive of the Quality.
4. The Genitive of the Object.

1. The Genitive of the Possessor.

1. The Genitive denotes the thing or person to whom anything belongs, whether as a duty, office, or possession; as,

*Adolescentis est majores natu revereri,* Libr* pu*eri,
it is the duty of a young man to reverence his seniors. The boy’s book.

*Obs.* This genitive seems always to depend upon a substantive (expressed or understood) which describes the thing possessed.

2. The impersonal verbs *interest* and *rēfert,* [it is the interest of, it concerns,] require the Genitive case of the person concerned; as,

*Interest magistratis tueri bonos,*
it is the interest of a magistrate to defend the good.

*Obs.* 1. The genitive really depends on *negotia* understood with *interest,* and *re* contained in *rēfert.*

*Obs.* 2. The *thing in which* any one’s interest is involved is expressed by an infinitive, or *ut* with the subjunctive; as, *tu*eri *bonos; or ut bonos tuetur.*

*Obs.* 3. The *degree of importance* is expressed by adverbs, or neuter adjectives; as, *magis,* or *plus refert.* *Tanti,* *quantii,* &c., are also used. [See words of *Price.*]

2. The Genitive of Participation.

1. All words used as *Partitives,* require a Genitive to denote the whole class of objects, from which a part is taken; as,
SYNTAX.

Manuum fortior est dextra,
the right is the stronger one of the hands.

Optimè omnium vivit, Utrum horum mavis accipe,
he lived in the best way of all. take which of these two you prefer.

Obs. 1. Partitive words are sometimes followed by the prepositions, de, ex, inter, ante, and their respective cases, instead of the genitive; as, Alter e vobis. Primus inter omnes.

Obs. 2. The whole is sometimes put in apposition with the part, instead of being in the genitive; as, Duo consules, alter ferro, alter morbo perierat,—of the two consuls, one had perished by the sword, the other by disease.

2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, denoting quantity, require a Genitive of the whole amount; as,

Paululum pecunia, Quiddam mali,
very little money. somewhat of evil.

3. Adverbs of quantity, time, and place, require a Genitive of the whole amount; as,

Satis eloquentiae, Ubi gentium, Tunc temporis,

enough of eloquence. where in the world. at that time.

Obs. Minimè gentium is only a strong negation, "by no means."

Loci, or locorum, is sometimes used to denote time; as, Ad id locorum, up to that time.

4. Adjectives denoting participation, and their contraries, require a Genitive of the object which is shared; as,

Particeps consilii, Expers fraudis,
sharing in the design. devoid of deceit.

Obs. Many adjectives of this kind admit also of an ablative, from their affinity to the meaning of fulness or want. [See Abl. No. 4.]

3. The Genitive of the Quality.

1. The quality and character of any person or thing is expressed in the Genitive or Ablative; as,

Ingenui virtus puer, Vir nullâ fide,
a boy of an ingenuous aspect. a man of no integrity.

Obs. 1 The word which describes the quality should have an adjective joined with it; as, Ingenui virtus.
GENITIVE CASE.

OBS. 2. When the qualifying adjective is omitted, the substantive, which was in the genitive or ablative, becomes an adjective, agreeing with the object; as, Puer pudicus, not Puer pudoris, a boy of modesty.

OBS. 3. When the word genus is used to describe the quality, it is generally put in the accusative, instead of the genitive; as, Id genus, of that sort. So also, id aestatis, of that age.

4. The Genitive of the Object.

1. A substantive requires the Genitive case to denote the object of an action or feeling; as,

   Crescit amor nummi,
   the love of money increases.

2. The impersonal verbs, pœnitet, tedet, miseret, pudet, piget, take a Genitive of the object which excites the feeling; as,

   Tedet me vitae,
   I am weary of life.

   Miseret me tui,
   I pity thee.

   OBS. This genitive seems really to depend upon a substantive understood; as, Tedet me vitae, i.e. possessio vitae tedet.

3. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, fear, and memory, with other affections of the mind, require a Genitive of the thing desired; as,

   Est natura hominum novitatis avida,
   the nature of man is eager for novelty.

4. Participles, when used as adjectives, and denoting a permanent quality, require a Genitive of their object; as,

   Alieni appetens,
   eager after another's.

   Diva potens Cypri,
   the Goddess who presides over Cyprus.

5. Verbs and adjectives of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, require a Genitive of the offence or charge; as,

   Qui alterum accusat probri,
   he who accuses another of dishonesty.

   OBS. 1. This genitive may be said to depend upon crimi, or a similar word, which is sometimes expressed.
Obs. 2. The ablative, with de, is sometimes used, especially with uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo, and superlatives; as, de utroque accusas, you accuse him of both.

Obs. 3. The ablative is the usual case for the punishment; as, copite damnatus, condemned to death.

6. Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting, require a Genitive or Accusative of the thing remembered; as,

Admoneto illum pristinae fortunae,
remind him of his former fortune.

Si rite audita recordor, Amicorum obliviscitur,
if I duly remember what I heard. he forgets his friends.

Obs. An ablative case, with the preposition de, sometimes follows verbs of reminding; as, Et de re te admonui, I reminded you of that thing.

7. Misereor and miserescere [to pity] require a Genitive, and miseror an Accusative, of the pitied object; as,

Miserere tuorum,
pity your friends.

Generis miserescere tui,
pity your own race.

Longum miserata dolorem,
having pitied her lingering pain.

8. Potior [to gain possession] requires a Genitive or Ablative of the thing possessed; as,

Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt,
the Romans gained possession of the standards and arms.

Optata potiuntur Troes arena,
the Trojans gain possession of the wished-for shore.

The Dative Case.

The use of the Dative may be divided into the following heads:—

1. The Dative of the Receiver.
2. The Dative of the Object, to which a direction is made.
3. The Dative of Union.
1. The Dative of the Receiver.

1. All verbs take a Dative of the object to whose benefit or injury anything is done; as,

\[ \text{Non potes mihi commodare}, \quad \text{Nocet homini voluptas}, \]

you cannot assist me. pleasure is injurious to man.

*Obs. 1.*—Hence verbs compounded with *bene*, *satis*, and *male*, govern a dative; as, *Tibi benefacio*, *Satisficit nobis*, *Mibi maledicit.*

*Obs. 2.*—*Medeor*, I heal; *nubo*, I am married; *parco*, I spare; *suadeo*, I recommend; and *vaco*, meaning I apply to anything; require a dative; as, *Philosophia medetur animis*, philosophy heals minds; *Venus nupti Vulcano*, Venus was married to Vulcan; *Vacat studiis*, he applies to his studies.

*Obs. 3.*—*Adulor*, I flatter; *amulor*, I rival; *asseculo*, I hearken to; *medico*, *medicor*, I medicate; *praestolor*, I wait for,—may have a dative or accusative: as, *adulatur tibi*, he flatters you; *quem praestolaris?* whom are you waiting for?

*Obs. 4.*—*Juro*, I assist; *lado*, I hurt; and *delecto*, I delight; are used as transitives, and take an accusative; as, *Fenam quies plurimum juvat*, rest very much assists a weary man.

2. Verbs of giving, paying, and entrusting, require a Dative of the receiver; as,

\[ \text{Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli}, \]

fortune gives too much to many, enough to none.

\[ \text{Æs alienum mihi numeravit, \quad Id mihi credo}, \]

he paid me the debt. trust that to me.

*Obs.*—*Dono*, I present, is used either with the accusative of the thing, and the dative of the person; or with the accusative of the person, and ablative of the thing, exactly like the English verb to present; as, *Librum homini donat*, he presents a book to a man; or, *hominem libro donat*, he presents a man with a book.

3. Verbs of promising, threatening, and declaring, require a Dative of the receiver; as,

\[ \text{Qua tibi promitto, \quad Utrique mortem minitatus est}, \]

which things I promise to you. he threatened both with death.

\[ \text{Cui dicas sape videto}, \]

often consider to whom you are speaking.
4. Verbs of commanding, obeying, and resisting, require a Dative of the receiver; as,

*Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique,*
money collected together commands or serves every one.

*Ignavis precibus Fortuna repugnat,*
Fortune repels idle prayers.

*Obs. 1.*—*Impero* takes an accusative of that which any one is commanded to furnish; as, *Imperat hostibus frumentum,* he commands the enemy [to supply] corn.

*Obs. 2.*—*Jubeo,* I order, takes an accusative, but always with an infinitive mood; as, *Me scribere jussit,* he ordered me to write.

*Obs. 3.*—*Rego,* I rule, and *guberno,* I guide, are transitives, and take an accusative; as, *Rempublicam regere, et orbem terrarum gubernare,* to rule the state, and guide the world.

*Obs. 4.*—*Tempero* and *moderor* take a dative, when they mean "to set bounds to," and an accusative, when they mean "to regulate;" as, *Temperat ipse sibi,* he restrains (or sets bounds to) himself. *Sol temperat omnia luce,* the sun regulates all things by its light.

5. Adjectives and adverbs denoting utility, pleasantry, ease, and their contraries, require a Dative of the object affected; as,

*Sifacis ut patriae sit idoneus, utilis agris,*
if you take care, that he is suited for his country, useful to the land.

*Turba gravis paci, placidaque intimica quieti,*
a crowd injurious to peace, and hostile to quiet rest.

*Obs.*—The *purpose* for which anything is useful, &c., is expressed in the accusative with *ad*; as, *utilis ad eam rem,* useful for that purpose.

2. The Dative of the Object to which a direction is made.

1. Verbs take a Dative of the object towards which they express a direction; as,

*Parvumque patri tendebat Iulum,*
she stretched forth the little Iulus to his father.

*Obs.* Verbs expressing actual motion prefer *ad* with an accusative; as, *tendens ad sidera palmas,* stretching his hands towards the stars.
2. Verbs expressing feelings and passions, require a Dative of the object for whom the feeling is entertained; as,

\[
\text{Illi timeo,} \quad \text{Favet desiderio tuo,}
\]

I fear for him. he favours your desire.

\[
\text{Adolescenti nihil est quod succenseam,}
\]

there is no reason why I should be angry with the youth.

3. Most verbs compounded with a preposition take a Dative case of the object to which the preposition refers; as,

\[
\text{Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero,}
\]

I prefer the most unjust peace to the most just war.

\[
\text{Postpono fame pecuniam,}
\]

I esteem money less than fame.

Obs.—\textit{Obrius}, meeting, and the adverbs \textit{obriam}, to meet, and \textit{praesto}, at hand, take a dative; as, \textit{Obriam ire hostibus}, to go to meet the enemies; \textit{Praesto esse amicos}, to be ready to assist one's friends.

4. Some verbs compounded with prepositions become transitives, and take an Accusative; as,

\[
\text{In vadunt urbem,} \quad \text{Tardum praecesserat agmen.}
\]

they attack the city. he had advanced before the slow band.

Obs. 1.—Such words are mostly compounded with prepositions which would require an accusative; though the meaning of the compound is slightly altered; as, \textit{in vadunt}, they attack—literally go into—the city.

5. Some verbs compounded with a preposition take a Dative or Accusative; as,

\[
\text{Certant illudere capto,} \quad \text{Iludis illud acumen,}
\]

they are eager to deride the captive. you deride that subtlety.

Obs. 1. \textit{Adspergo}, \textit{inspergo}, I besprinkle; \textit{circundó}, I surround; \textit{circunfundó}, I pour around; (rarely \textit{imperto}, I impart;) have the same construction as \textit{dono}; thus, \textit{circundó custodias tibi}, or \textit{circumdo te custodiis}, I surround you with guards. To these are sometimes added, \textit{induo}, I put on; and \textit{cesso}, I put off. Yet these usually have \textit{induit corpori vestem}, or \textit{induit vestem}; \textit{exuit corpus veste}, or \textit{exuit vestem}.

Obs. 2.—\textit{Invideo} takes the accusative of the thing and the dative
of the person, or the dative only of the person or thing; as, Invidet honorem mihi; Invidet honori meo; or, Invidet mihi honorato, he envies me my honour.

Obs. 3.—Despérò, I despair, takes either a dative, or else an ablative with de; as, Desperat sibi; or, Desperat de se, he despairs of himself.

Obs. 4.— Some compound verbs have different cases with different meanings; as, Illi convenio, I suit him; illum convenio, I meet with him. Baculo incumbit, he leans on a stick; ad—or in—laudem incumbit, he applies himself to (the pursuit of) praise.

6. Prepositions in composition very often retain their usual force, and take the case they would otherwise require; as,

Detruunt naves scopulo, Prætereo te insalutatum,
they thrust down the ships from the rock. I pass you by unsaluted.

Obs.—Some verbs compounded with ab, ad, cum, de, ex, in, repeat the preposition with its case; as, Abstinuerunt a vino, they abstained from wine.

7. Many verbs take a second Dative to express the effect or destination; as,

Ampla domus scepe domino dedecori fit,
a large house often becomes a disgrace to the master.

Obs. The second dative is derived from the expressions used in keeping accounts, and signifies literally, set down under the head of gain or loss; appositorum, apponendam, or a similar word, being understood; as, "a great house becomes to the master a thing—dedecori (aponendam)—to be set down under the head of disgrace."

2. The Dative of Union.

1. Words compounded with the preposition cum, take a Dative of the object to which another is joined; as,

Sic parvis componere magna solebam, Conservus illi,
thus I was wont to compare great things with small. his fellow-servant.

Obs. 1.—Verbs of comparison sometimes take an ablative with cum, sometimes an accusative with ad or inter; as, Comparo Virgilio cum Homero, I compare Virgil with Homer; Si ad cum comparatur nihil est, if he is compared to him, he is nothing; Hæc
non sunt inter se conferenda, these things are not to be compared together.

Obs. 2.—Communis sometimes takes a genitive; as, Commune animantium omnium est, it is common to all animals.

2. Verbs of fighting and contending take cum with an Ablative in prose, but a Dative in poetry; as,

Pugnant nobiscum,
they fight with us.

Frigida pugnabant calidis, humentia siccis,
cold things fought with hot, and moist with dry.

Obs.—Miscro, takes both these constructions in prose; loquor, in prose, takes cum with an ablative.

3. Adjectives and adverbs denoting similarity, equality, affinity, and their contraries, require a Dative of the object to which they refer; as,

Patri similis, Est finitimus oratori poeta,
like his father. a poet is near akin to an orator.

Obs. 1.—Similis also takes a genitive, mostly in the sense of resemblance in internal character; as, Domini similis es, like master, like man.

Obs. 2.—Prope, with its comparatives and superlatives, govern a dative or accusative; as, Tibi proprius, nearer to you; Proximè Hispaniam Mauri sunt, the Moors are nearest to Spain.

Obs. 3.—Proprius, peculiar; affinis, akin; aequalis, par, equal; and superest, surviving; are sometimes used as substantives, and then take a genitive; as, Proprium est hominis, it is the peculiar property of man.

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. All transitive verbs, whether active or deponent, take an Accusative case of the immediate object; as,

Vexus facit, Aper agros depopulatur,
he makes verses. a boar lays waste the fields.

Obs. 1. Some neuter verbs are found with an accusative because an action exerted upon another is implied, though not expressed in them; as, sitire aquam, to be thirsty—and thence to desire—water; caedere periculum, to beware—and thence to avoid—danger.

Obs. 2. Neuter verbs of smelling or tasting take an accusative of the smell or taste; as, Olet unguenta, he smells of perfumes; Piscis ipsum mare sapit, the fish tastes of the sea itself.
Obs. 3. Any neuter verb may take an accusative of a cognate noun; as, *Duram servit servitutem*, he serves a hard service.

2. Verbs of asking, teaching, advising, and concealing, generally take two Accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

\[ \text{Tu modo posce Deos veniam, Unum te moneo,} \]
do you only beg pardon of the gods. one thing I advise you.

\[ \text{Dedocebo te istos mores,} \]
I will unteach you those manners of yours.

\[ \text{Ea ne me celer consuefeci filium.} \]
I have accustomed my son not to hide those things from me.

Obs. 1. Some verbs of teaching, from their etymology and literal meaning, are followed by an ablative of the thing; as, *Erudire aliquem artibus*, to remove any one from a state of ignorance, by means of accomplishments.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and concealing may have an ablative of the person with the preposition a; as, *Rogat a me*, he asks of me; *Celat ab illo*, he conceals from him.

Obs. 3. Verbs of inquiring and advising may have an ablative of the thing with the preposition de; as, *Quero de ea re*, I inquire about that thing; *Putavi ea de re te esse admonendum*, I thought you should be admonished about that thing.

3. The Accusative of the thing remains with such verbs in the passive voice; as,

\[ \text{Posceris exta bovis,} \]
you are required (to offer) the entrails of an ox.

\[ \text{Dedoceberis a me istos mores,} \]
you shall be untaught those manners by me.

THE VOCATIVE CASE.

The Vocative is used when a person is addressed; and is not connected with any other word in the sentence; as,

\[ \text{Turne, in te suprema salus!} \]
O Turnus, in thee is our last resource.
THE ABLATIVE CASE.

The use of the Ablative may be divided into the following heads:—

1. The Ablative of the Agent.
3. The Ablative of the Price.
4. The Ablative of Fullness or want.

1. The Ablative of the Agent.

1. With passive verbs the agent by whom the action is performed is put in the Ablative, with the preposition a or ab; as,

\[ \text{Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis,} \]
he is praised by these, he is blamed by those.

2. Passive participles often take the Dative of the agent, instead of the ablative, with a or ab; as,

\[ \text{Formidatus Othoni, Mibi exorandus est,} \]
dreaded by Otho. he must be prevailed on by me.

Obs. 1. Verbal adjectives in \( \text{bilis} \), being used passively, follow the construction of participles; as, \( \text{Nulli penetrabilis astro, penetrable by no star.} \)

Obs. 2. Sometimes the dative is used with verbs; as, \( \text{Mibi videtur, it seems to me, i.e. it is seen by me.} \)

3. Neuter passives have the same construction with the agent as passive verbs; as,

\[ \text{A proceptore vapulabis,} \]
you shall be beaten by the master.

4. \( \text{Natus, oriundus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus,} \)
meaning 'born' or 'sprung from,' are followed by an Ablative, either with or without a preposition; as,

\[ \text{Nate Dea, Quo sanguine cretus,} \]
born of a goddess. sprung from what blood.

\[ \text{Edita de magnio flumine,} \]
sprung from a great river.

1. Verbs and Nouns take an Ablative case to denote the instrument, cause, or manner of existence; as,

*Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit,*
the wolf attacks with his tooth, the bull with his horn.

*Pallidus ira,*
pale from anger.

*Nomine grammaticus,*
by name a grammarian.

2. The part affected by a verb or adjective is put in the Ablative, Accusative, and sometimes the Genitive; as,

*Aegrotat animo magis quam corpore,*
he is more sick in mind than in body.

*Tremit artus,*
he trembles in his limbs.

*Aburam facis qui angas te animi,*
you act absurdly in distressing yourself in mind.

*Obs.* The accusative has a preposition, such as ad or secundum, understood, and is mostly used in poetry, in imitation of the Greek.

3. The Ablative of the Price.

1. Verbs and adjectives of buying, selling, and valuing, require an Ablative of the price or cost; as,

*Teruncio seu vitiosi nuce non emerim,*
I would not buy it at a farthing or a rotten nut.

*Gemmis venale nec auro,*
to be sold neither for jewels nor gold.

*Obs.* 1. *Vili, paulo, minimo, magno,* and some other adjectives denoting the price, are often used without a substantive, the word *pretio* being understood; as, *Vili venit tritium,* wheat sells cheap.

*Obs.* 2. Some substantives denoting a mean value, as *flocci, nauci, nihil, pili,* are put in the genitive, and depend on *pretio,* understood; as, *Ego illum flocci pendo, nec hujus facio, qui me pili aestimat,* I do not value him at a lock of wool, nor care that for him, who reckons me at the value of a hair.

*Obs.* 3. Some adjectives denoting an indefinite value, as *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are put alone in the genitive, *ceris* money, and *pretio,* being understood; as, *Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris,* you
will be of as much value to others, as you shall have been to yourself.

Obs. 4. *Muto,* I exchange, often takes the thing given in the accusative, and the thing received in the ablative; as, *Mutat quadrata rotundis,* he changes square things for round: sometimes it has the construction of a verb of price; as, *Sese Lucretiīnam mutat Lyceum Faunus,* Faunus often leaves Lyceum for Lucretiīnas—literally ‘purchases Lucretiīnas, at the price of Lyceum.’

4. The Ablative of Fullness or Want.

1. Verbs denoting abundance, fullness, and their contraries, take an Ablative of the object which abounds or is deficient; as,

*Germania rivis fluminibusque abundat,*
Germany abounds in streams and rivers.

*Amicorum consuetudine caret,*
he is without the society of his friends.

2. Adjectives denoting abundance or want, take an Ablative or Genitive; as,

*Res plena timoris,*  
*Et melle et felle fœcundissimus,*  
a thing full of fear.  
very abundant both in honey and in gall.

Obs. 1.—Adjectives of this kind generally admit either a genitive or ablative; and with many the genitive is the more usual case from their affinity to the meaning of Participation. [see Gen. No. 2].

Obs. 2.—Some verbs of want and fullness take occasionally a Genitive; as, *Implentur veteres Bacchi,* they are filled with old wine; *Quasi tu hujus indigeeas patria,* as if you wanted this father; *Desine querelarum,* cease from complaints.

3. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, supersedeo,* take an Ablative, like verbs of fullness and want; as,

*Justicte fungitūr officiis,*  
*Aliēnæ frui insanitae,*  
he discharges the duties of justice.  
to profit by the madness of another.

*Duplici spe utimur,*  
*Vescor carnibus,*  
we use a two-fold hope.  
I feed on flesh.

*Tali me dignor honore,*
I think myself worthy of such honour.

*Verborum multitudine supersedeo,*  
I do away with a multitude of words.

Obs.—*Fungor, fruor,* &c., in old writers, are found with an accusative.
4. Dignus, indignus, prœditus, captus, contentus, extor-ris, fretus, liber, take an Ablative of the object to which they refer; as,

*Dignus ex odio,*
you are worthy of hatred.

*Oculis captus,*
deprived of sight.

*Extorris patriæ,*
banished from his country.

*Tali ingenio prœditus,*
endued with such a disposition.

*Sorte tūd contentus,*
contented with your lot.

*Terrore liber,*
free from terror.

Obs. 1.—When the object which follows *dignus* is an action or state, it is expressed by a verb in the subjunctive mood, with a relative; as, *Dignus erat quem amares,* or *qui amat,* he was worthy to be loved. Also the infinitive may be thus used, especially in poetry; as, *Erat tum dignus amari.*

Obs. 2.—*Dignus* and *extorris* sometimes take a genitive; as, *Carmina digna Deæ,* verses worthy of a Goddess; *Extorris regni,* banished the kingdom.

5. *Opus* and *usus,* [need,] require an Ablative of the thing desired; as,

*Auctoritate tūd nobis opus est,*
we have need of your authority.

Obs.—*Opus* is sometimes put in apposition with the thing required, instead of governing it; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est,* a leader and adviser is requisite for us.

6. Verbs of separation and removal generally take an Ablative, with the preposition *a*; as,

*Hunc a tuis ariæ arcebis,*
you will drive this man from your altars.

Obs. 1.—Sometimes verbs of separation are followed by a dative; as, *Paulum sepulta distat inertia celata virtus,* concealed virtue differs little from buried sloth.

Obs. 2.—*Defendo* means to ward off, as well as to defend; hence it takes either the danger or the person in the accusative; as, *Defendere nimiæ ardores solis ab aliquo,* or, *Defendere aliquem a nimiæ solis ardore.* Also a dative of the person in poetry; as, *Solstitium pecori defendite.*

Obs. 3.—*Abdico,* to abdicate, commonly takes the accusative of the person, and the ablative of the office; as, *Abdicavit se magistratus.* Sometimes the accusative of the office; as, *Abdicare consulatum.*
Ablative Absolute.

Time.

1. A point of time is expressed in the Ablative; as,

\[ \text{Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit,} \]
\[ \text{no mortal is wise at all times.} \]

2. Duration of time is expressed in the Accusative; as,

\[ \text{Tercentum totos regnabitur annos,} \]
\[ \text{kings shall reign for three hundred whole years.} \]

Obs. 1.—Time before, and time after, are expressed by an ablative, with ante and post; or by an accusative, governed by them; as, Tribus ante annis, three years before; Post tres annos, three years after.

Obs. 2.—When two spaces or points of time are compared, either quam, ex quo, quo, or quum, may be used; as, Tertio anno quam venerat, the third year since he had come; Biduo quo hae gesta sunt, two days since these things were done.

Obs. 3.—The length of time in which an event was accomplished is expressed by the ablative; as, Graeci vix decem annis Trojam ceverunt, the Greeks scarcely took Troy in ten years.

Obs. 4.—We may also say de die, by day; promitto in diem, for a day; annos ad quinquaginta natus, as many as fifty years old; per tres annos, during three years; puer id atatis, a boy of that age; tertio, or ad tertium, or ante diem tertium calendae, or calendae, the third day before the calends.

Obs. 5.—Military and bellic, in time of war, perhaps depend on tempore understood.

The Ablative Absolute.

A substantive or pronoun is often joined to a participle, without their depending upon any other word; as,

\[ \text{Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus,} \]
\[ \text{Christ was born when Augustus was reigning.} \]

Obs. 1.—The Ablative absolute seems to be a definition of time, and on that account the ablative case is used. It may commonly be rendered in English by when or while.

Obs. 2.—The participle is sometimes omitted with the ablative; as, me duce tutus eris, you will be safe, when I am your guide.
Obs. 3.—The ablative absolute can never be used except when a new subject is introduced; as, while he reigns, he will be safe, *ille regnans, or dum regnat, tutus erit*; but, while he reigns, I shall be safe, *illo regnante, tutus ero.*

**SPACE.**

1. Distance is expressed in the Accusative or Ablative; as,

*Jam mille passus processeram,*

I had now proceeded a mile.

*Abest ab urbe quingentis millibus passuum,*

he is distant from the city five hundred miles.

Obs.—With *abest bidui, iter* is understood,—he is distant two days' journey.

2. The measurement of size is expressed in the Accusative, Ablative, and sometimes the Genitive; as,

*Turris centum pedes alta,*  *Fons latus pedibus tribus,*

a tower one hundred feet high. a fountain three feet wide.

*Area lata pedum denum,*

a floor ten feet wide.

**NAMES OF PLACES.**

1. The name of a town, _where_ anything is done, is put in the Dative; as,

*Quid Romae faciam?*  *Thebis nutritus an Argis,*

what shall I do at Rome? brought up at Thebes or Argos.

Obs. 1.—Nouns of the O—declension generally used an old form of the dative ending in _i_ instead of _o_, to express "at a place." Whence this dative has been sometimes called the genitive; as, *Corinti*, at Corinth.

Obs. 2.—Datives originally ending in _i_, were often shortened into _i_, in expressing at a place; whence this dative has been sometimes called the ablative; as, *Carthagini, or Carthagine, at Carthage.*

2. _To a place_ is expressed by the Accusative; as,

*Romam rediiit,*

he returned to Rome.
3. *From a place* is expressed by the Ablative; as,

\[ \text{Nisi ante Romā prefectus esses,} \]

if you had not gone from Rome before.

4. The names of countries, and common nouns, are used with a preposition, to express *at*, *to*, or *from*; as,

\[ \text{In Italiā. Ad Italian. Ex Italiā.} \]

**Obs. 1.**—The following common nouns need to be remarked:

- *domi*, at home.
- *domum*, homeward.
- *domo*, from home.
- *foris*, abroad [at the doors].
- *foras*, (to go) abroad [to the doors].
- *humi*, on the ground—or—to the ground.
- *huma*, from the ground.
- *ruris* (s), in the country.
- *rust*, to the country.
- *rure*, from the country.

**Obs. 2.**—The poets used the names of countries like those of towns; as, *Non Libyae, non ante Tyro*, not in Africa, not before at Tyre. And they sometimes used the dative of a common noun, instead of the accusative with *ad*; as, *It clamor CEO*, the shout rises to heaven.

**Obs. 3.**—*Ad* with the name of a town means not *at*, but *near*, the place; as, *ad Romam*, near Rome.

---

IV. ADJECTIVES.

1. *The Comparative Degree.*

1. The comparative compares one object with another, by means of the conjunction *quam*; as,

\[ \text{Otium melius quam desidiam puto,} \]

I think leisure better than idleness.

**Obs. 1.** The two nouns joined by *quam* will be in the same case, when they are both predicates of the same subject, or subjects of the same verb; thus, *otium* and *desidiam*: otherwise the cases will differ; as, *viro meliori quam tu es dedi,—not quam tibi,—I gave it to a better man than you.*

**Obs. 2.**—When the Comparative denotes that a quality exists in too high a degree for some other event to ensue, *quam* is followed by *ut* or *qui*, with a subjunctive mood; as, *Graviora mala quam ut fere possem, evils too severe for me to be able to weep. Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere, I am too great for fortune to be able to hurt me.*

**Obs. 3.** The Positive is sometimes used for the comparative, and is then followed by *ad*, with a gerund or gerundial adjective, instead of *quam* with *ut* or *qui*; as, *Imbecilla natura est ad contemptendam potestatem, nature is too weak to despise power.*
Obs. 4. When the Comparative denotes a quality which is compared with another that bears some proportion to it, *quam* is followed by the preposition *pro*; as, *Plura arma quam pro mortuorum numero*, a greater number of arms than was proportionate to the number of the dead.

Obs. 5. When two qualities possessed by the same subject are compared, both adjectives are in the positive with *magis—quam*, or both in the comparative; as, *Magis eloquens quam sapiens*; or *eloquentior quam sapientior*, more eloquent than wise.

2. *Quam* is often omitted after Comparatives, and the latter substantive put in the Ablative case; as,

\[
Vilius argentum est auro, \\
silver is of less value than gold.
\]

Obs. 1. *Quam* must not be omitted, when any ambiguity would ensue: hence the ablatival should not be used, when the things compared are not subjects of the same verb; thus, *nulli fidelior quam tibi*,—not *te*,—he is more to be lamented by no one than by you.

Obs. 2. The ablative instead of *quam* must always be used, in the case of a *negative* word, or a *relative* pronoun; as, *Nemine sapientior est*,—not *quam nemo*,—he is wiser than no one. *Vide fratrem, quo duobus annis sum junior*,—not *quam qui*,—I saw my brother, than whom I am younger by two years.

3. *Quam* is often omitted, without an Ablative, after *amplius, plus, and minus*; as,

\[
Amplius sunt sex menses, \\
there are more than six months.
\]

Obs. The comparative in such expressions seems to be put in apposition with—or to qualify—the noun; thus, “There are six months—and more.”

2. The *Superlative*.

1. *Quam* is set before Superlatives to denote the greatest possible degree; as,

\[
Quam celerrime, \\
as quickly as possible.
\]

2. *Unus* is used to increase the force of the Superlative; as,

\[
Justissimus unus qui fuit, \\
who was the most just of all.
\]

3. To denote the *measure of excess*, or the degree in
which one object is surpassed by another, the Ablatives tanto, quanto, hoc, eo, and quo, together with some others, are used; as,

Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus,
in how great a degree are you the best patron.
Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt,
the more they have, the more they desire.

Numerals.

1. The plural of unus is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular number has a distinct signification from the plural; as,

Una mænia, Una ædes,
one city, one house.

2. Mille is an undeclined adjective in the singular, and a declinable substantive in the plural; as,

Mille homines, Duo millia hominum,
a thousand men. two thousands of men.

3. The distributive numerals are, from their nature, generally used in the plural; as,

Scipio et Hannibal cum singulis interpretibus,
Scipio and Hannibal with an interpreter each.

4. Distributives are used with plural nouns, in the same manner as the plural of unus is employed; as,

Bina mænia, Ternæ ædes,
two cities, three houses.

Obs. Tres ædes would mean three temples: but the poets use distributives for cardinal numbers; as, Terno ordine, in three ranks, for tribus ordinibus.

V. Pronouns.

1. Personal Pronouns.

1. Nos and vos have two forms of the genitive:—

Nostrum and vestrum are generally used with partitive words, nostri and vestri in all other constructions; as,
Unus nostrum, one of us.
Nil nostri miserereis, you pity us not at all.
Optimus vestrum, the best of you.
Similis vestri, like you.

2. Sui and suus are reflective pronouns, and denote an agent whose action returns upon himself; as, Petrus nimium admiratur se; parcit erroribus suis, Peter admires himself too much; he spares his own faults.

3. Sui and suus always refer to the principal word in the sentence; thus, se and suis refer to Petrus.

Obs. 1. The principal word is properly the subject of the proposition in which the reflective pronoun is found; as, Petrus nimium admiratur se; therefore when a second subject is introduced, is should be used in referring to the first; thus, Hannibal, velut Italia ci provinciæ decreta esset, inferre bellum statuit, Hannibal determined to make war, as if Italy had been given to him as his province.

Obs. 2. Yet sometimes, when no ambiguity can arise from it, sui and suus refer to the subject of a preceding proposition; as, Dionysius instituit ut filia sibi barbam aduerrent, Dionysius taught his daughters to burn off his beard.

Obs. 3. When the pronoun is emphatic, yet sui or suus would cause ambiguity, ipse must be used instead; as, Jugurtha legatos misit qui ipsi liberisque vitam pazerent, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to beg life for himself and his children.

Obs. 4. Suus (but never sui) sometimes refers to the object of its own proposition, and then it generally agrees with the subject; as, Hunc sui cives ejecerunt, his own citizens turned him out.

4. Ipse lays an emphasis on the word to which it is joined; as,

Hoc ipsum mihi molestum est,
this very thing is troublesome to me.

Obs. 1. Ipse may take the same case as the pronoun to which it is joined, or may agree with the subject of the verb; as, Virtus est per se ipsa laudabilis, or per se ipsam, virtue is laudable of itself.

Obs. 2. Ipse, with expressions of time, means sometimes the same as—totus; as, Tres ipseos annos, three whole years.
2. Possessives.

A Possessive pronoun has the same meaning as a personal pronoun in the Genitive case.

1. A Possessive pronoun is used to denote the Genitive of the Possessor; as,

Non est meum contra auctoritatem senatūs dicere,

it does not belong to me to contradict the authority of the senate.

Tuus liber,                      Nostrā refert,
your book.                        it concerns us.

Obs. 1. When Possessives are used with the verb interest, they are the accusative neuter plural agreeing with negotia understood; when used with refert, they are the ablative fem. singular agreeing with the re in refert.

Obs. 2. The genitives nostrām and vestrām are sometimes found instead of the possessives noster and vester; as, majores vestrām [for vestri], your ancestors.

2. A Possessive often takes an adjective in the Genitive, to agree with the personal pronoun which is implied; as,

Meum solius peccatum,

the fault of me alone.

Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus,

he answers to the praises of you few.

3. A relative also may have for its antecedent the personal pronoun implied in the Possessive; as,

Laudare fortunas meas, qui natum habebam,

to praise the fortunes of me, who had a son.

3. Demonstratives.

1. When hic and ille refer to two things previously mentioned, hic generally means the latter and ille the former; as,

Quocunque aspicias nihil est nisi pontus et aer,

Nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax.

whithersoever you look there is nothing but sea and sky,
the latter swelling with clouds, the former menacing with waves.

Obs. This order is sometimes reversed; as, Sic Deus et Virgo est, hic spe celer, ille timore.
2. *Is* is a less forcible Demonstrative than *ille*, and is used very nearly as a personal pronoun; as,

\[ \textit{Corpus ejus}, \]
\[ \text{his body.} \]

\textit{Obs.} When the same object belongs to different persons it may be repeated with both, or omitted with the latter person; but it must not be rendered by *ille*, as it is by "that" in English; as, His name is great, but *that* of his father is greater, *ejus nomen magnum est, et patris majus—or patris nomen—never—*illud patris*.

4. Relatives.

A Relative is often equivalent to a conjunction with a personal or demonstrative pronoun; as,

\[ \textit{Qui cum dixisset}, \]
\[ \text{and when he had spoken.} \]

5. Interrogatives.

1. An Interrogative, and the word which answers to it, must be in the same case; as,

\[ \textit{Quis magistrum amat? — Puer.} \]
\[ \text{Who loves the master?—The boy.} \]
\[ \textit{Quinam magister carus est? — Puerō.} \]
\[ \text{To whom is the master dear?—To the boy.} \]

\textit{Obs.} The case of the answer must be varied, if words of a different construction are used; as, \textit{Quanti emisti? — viginti minis, for how much did you buy it?—for twenty minae.} \]

2. Questions are called \textit{indirect} when the interrogative depends upon some other word; as,

\[ \begin{array}{ll}
\text{DIRECT.} & \text{INDIRECT.} \\
\text{Quis est?} & \text{Novi quis sit,} \\
\text{Who is he?} & \text{I know who he is.} \\
\text{Quid facis?} & \text{Video quid facias,} \\
\text{What are you doing?} & \text{I see what you are doing.}
\end{array} \]

\textbf{N.B.} Indirect questions in English are distinguished by the personal pronoun being placed before the verb—in Latin they are distinguished by the subjunctive mood.

3. *Quis*, and its compounds, *aliquis, quidam, &c.*, have two forms of the neuter; *quod* is used with a substantive, and *quid* is used without one; as,

\[ \begin{array}{ll}
\text{Quid?} & \text{Quod nomen?} \\
\text{what?} & \text{what name?}
\end{array} \]
Obs. **Quis** is often used as an indefinite word for "any one," especially with *si, ne, nisi,* and *num;* it then makes its feminine Sing. and neuter Plur. in *quâ;* as, *Si qua fides est,* if there is any faithfulness.

6. **Adjective Pronouns.**

1. When two things are declared to be similar, *idem* is used with *qui, ac,* or *atque;* as, 
   
   *Vita eadem est ac fuit,*
   
   his life is the same as it was.

   Obs. Sometimes, in imitation of the Greek, *idem* is followed by a dative case; as, *Idem facit occidenti,* does the same as one who kills him.

2. *Idem* may be used in the sense of *item,* or *etiam;* and is then sometimes repeated; as,
   
   *Nihil est utile quod non idem honestum,*
   
   nothing is useful which is not also honest.

   *Fuere quidam, qui idem ornâtæ, idem versûtæ dicerent,*
   
   there were some who spoke with grace and also with subtlety.

3. When one object is declared to be different from another, *alius,* or one of its derivatives, is used with *quam, ac,* or *atque;* as,
   
   *Aliud dicit quam sentit,*
   
   he speaks differently from what he thinks.

   Obs. Sometimes *alius* is repeated instead of *quam;* as, *Aliud dicit alius sentit,* he thinks one thing and says another.

4. *Alius,* with one of its own cases, or a derivative, denotes a diversity in different things; as,
   
   *Aliud aliis videtur,*
   
   one thing seems good to one person, and another to another.

   Obs. When only two things and persons are spoken of, *alter* is used; as, *Alterum in alterius mortem sanguine cernam,* I shall see them slain each in the other's blood.

5. **Quisquam** and **ullus** are used only in negative, interrogative, or conditional clauses: as,
   
   *Non illi quisquam se impune tulisset obvius,*
   
   no one would have met him with impunity.

   Obs. **Quisquam** is used without a substantive; **ullus** generally with one, [except in poetry.]
VI. 

VERBS.

The Voices.

1. The immediate object of the Active Verb, which is always in the accusative case, becomes the subject of the Passive; as,

\[ \text{Amo illum,} \quad \text{Ille amatur a me,} \]

I love him.
he is loved by me.

2. Verbs which govern only a dative case in the Active, and therefore have no immediate object, have no Passive voice, except as impersonal verbs; as,

Act. \text{Persuadet mihi, he persuades me.}
Pass. \text{Persuadetur mihi, or Persuasum habeo, (not persuadeor), I am persuaded.}

3. The government and construction of impersonal verbs is the same as that of the personal ones; only impersonal verbs never have a personal subject.

4. Passive impersonals become equivalent in meaning to active verbs by adding the personal pronouns as agents; as,

\[ \text{Statur a me, i.e. sto.} \quad \text{Statur ab illis, i.e. stant.} \]

The Moods.

The Indicative.

1. The Indicative Mood is used in all dependent propositions; as,

\[ \text{Alexander vicit Darium,} \]
Alexander conquered Darius.

2. The Indicative is used in all independent propositions which belong to the true subject of another proposition; as,

\[ \text{Si me audies, vitabis inimicitias,} \]
if you will hear me you will avoid hostilities.
\[(si \text{ me audies, qualifying tu, the subject).} \]
\[ \text{Vir sapit, qui pauc\text{a loquitur,} } \]
the man who speaks little is wise.
\[(qui \text{ pauc\text{a loquitur, belonging to vir, the subject).} \]


The Subjunctive.

General Principle. The Subjunctive Mood is used in dependent clauses which belong to the true Predicate of another proposition; as,

\[ \text{Stultus es, qui huic credas,} \]

you are foolish for believing him.
(where \text{qui huic credas} is attached to \text{stultus}, the predicate).

General Observation. When a relative clause is inserted parenthetically to explain the antecedent, it takes an Indicative Mood, whether it belongs to the predicate or not; as,

\[ \text{Bellum, quod est in Syria, tibi tributum esse cognovis,} \]

I learned that the war, which is in Syria, was assigned to you.
(where \text{quod est in Syria} is inserted parenthetically).

The General Principle of the Subjunctive Mood may be illustrated by several subordinate Rules.

The use of the Subjunctive may be divided into two heads:

I. The true Subjunctive.
II. The Subjunctive, used potentially.

I. The true Subjunctive.

The true Subjunctive has the same meaning as the Indicative, but it always follows some conjunction or relative; as,

\[ \text{Faciébam,} \quad \text{Cum facerem,} \]

I was doing. when I was doing.

1. The Subjunctive is used to express a consequence or result; as,

\[ \text{Sæpe evenit ut utilitas cum honestate pugnet,} \]

it often happens that expediency is at variance with honesty.

\text{Obs.} The consequence or result is commonly introduced by \text{ut}, and is often preceded by an intensive word, such as \text{ita}, \text{tam}, \text{tans}, \&c.; as, \text{tam crudelis erat, ut omnes cum metuerent}, he was so cruel that all feared him.

The consequence is sometimes introduced by \text{qui} instead of \text{ut}.

2. The Subjunctive is used in all Indirect Questions; as,

\[ \text{o.2} \]
Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere,
avoid inquiring what will be to-morrow.

Obs. All interrogatives therefore take the Subjunctive Mood when they depend upon some other verb.

3. The Subjunctive is used with the Relative pronoun qui:—

(a) When the Relative clause expresses the sentiments of another, and not of the writer himself; as, *Equum œneum animadverterit, cujus in lateribus foras essent,* he saw a brazen horse with a door in its side. (where *essent* is equivalent to *esse animadverterit*).

Obs. 1. This rule includes all forms of expression called the oratio obliqua, wherein all relative pronouns and conjunctions have the Subjunctive.

Obs. 2. Whenever the Relative clause expresses the sentiments of the writer himself, and not of another, the Indicative Mood is used; because then the Relative interrupts the course of the Predicate, and is parenthetical. [See Gen. Obs.]

(b) When the Relative expresses the cause of an assertion; as,

\[
\text{Stultus es qui huic credas,}
\]

you are foolish for believing him—(or because you believe).

Obs. When *quod* and *cum* are used to express a cause, they are generally attached to the subject of the proposition, and take the Indicative; as, *Stultus es quod huic credis,* you, because you believe him, are foolish. Yet when the conjunction refers to a dependent verb, and the whole sentence is in the Predicate, the Subjunctive is found; as, *Puto te stultum esse quod huic credas,* I think that you are foolish for believing him.

(c) When the Relative qualifies an assertion, and may be rendered "although;" as,

\[
\text{Qui te incolunem esse nollent, ii monumentum formæ cupiebant,}
\]

they wished for a memorial of your person, although they wished you not to be safe.

(d) When the Relative follows the verb *esse,* to be, used alone, or with some qualifying word, and makes together with it only one assertion; as,

\[
\text{Sunt qui dicant, Quis est qui dicat,}
\]

there are some who say. who is there that says?

(i. e. some say) (i. e. who says?)
Moods.

Solus est qui dicit,  Nemo est qui dicit,
he is the only one that says.  there is no one that says.

Obs. Est or sunt is sometimes joined with the qui, and used as one word, equivalent to quidam; it then requires the Indicative; as, Sunt quibus unum opus est, to some it is their only work.

(e) When the Relative expresses a consequence, (see Rule I.); as,
Nulla vis tanta est, quae mihi nocere possit,
no force is so great, as to be able to hurt me.

4. When Quod, "that," denotes the object of a transitive verb, and thus answers to the Accusative of a noun, it takes the Subjunctive; as,
Mitto quod pericula subieris,
I omit that you have undergone dangers.

Obs. With neuter verbs quod mostly takes an Indicative in this position, because then it more evidently denotes a cause, and may be joined to the subject; as, Quod bene tales gaudeo, because you are well, I rejoice; or, your being well, causes my joy. [See Rule (b) Obs.]
The other meanings of Quod should have the Indicative.

5. Cum, signifying since, or although, takes the Subjunctive; as,
Cum amet alien, non est utile hanc illi dari,
it is not well that she should be given to him, since he loves another.
Nullum frigidius flumen attigi, cum ad multa accesserim,
I never felt a colder stream, though I have visited many.

6. Cum, signifying when, takes the Indicative when the coincidence in point of time is emphatic—otherwise the Subjunctive; as,
Cum ego docebo tu discas,
when I shall teach you shall learn.
Cum Aristides audisset, in concionem venit,
When Aristides had heard, he came into the assembly.

II. The Subjunctive used Potentially.
The Subjunctive used Potentially denotes something contingent or uncertain, and must be rendered by may, might, should, &c.; as,
Ut redeat,  Si redirent,
that he may return.  if they should return.
Obs. The subjunctive mood is always subjunctive; i.e. subjoined to or dependent upon some other word. And though when used potentially, it often appears to be independent; yet such sentences are elliptical, and some word must be supplied; as, Quisquam adoret? would any adore? supply estne ut, is it possible that?

1. The Subjunctive is used with a condition to express what would happen if something else occurred; as,

Feceret si tentaret, he would do it if he tried.  
Fecisset si tentasset, he would have done it if had he tried.

Obs. 1. The Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses are commonly used with this meaning. Yet the Present is also found; as, Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias, if you were here, you would think differently.

Obs. 2. The condition to which the subjunctive refers, is often not expressed; as, Uteretur eadem confessione Annius, Annius would confess the same—if he were asked. This is especially the case with the Present and even the Perfect tense; as, Hoc Ithacus velit, the Ithacan would wish for this. Crediderim, I might believe—if it were required. Hence such expressions soften an assertion like the Greek optative with τερ.

2. The Subjunctive is used in questions to express doubt or uncertainty; as,

Quid faciam? what can [or shall] I do?  
Quid facerem? what could [or should] I do?

Obs. The Present Subjunctive thus used, may often be rendered by a future; as, Quisquam adoret? will any one adore!

3. The Subjunctive is used to express a wish or duty; as,

Emas quod necesse est, you should buy what is necessary.  
Valeas! may you be well!

Obs. 1. Utinam, opto, or other similar words, may be supplied; and are sometimes expressed.

Obs. 2. From this use of the Subjunctive, the Present and Perfect tenses are often employed as Imperatives, especially in negative expressions; as, Nefacias, do it not.

4. The Subjunctive is used to express a purpose or intention; as,
MOODS.

Veni ut viderem,
I came to see him—[or that I might see].

Obs. 1. This use of the Subjunctive is the same as when it
denotes a consequence or result; only when a result is future and
depends upon an agent, it becomes uncertain, and is rendered
by may or might.

Obs. 2. A purpose may be introduced by the conjunctions ut,
ne, quo, quin, quominus, &c., or by the Relative pronoun; as, Misit
legatos qui dicerent, he sent ambassadors to say—[or who might
say].

5. When Qui has an indefinite antecedent, it takes
the Subjunctive; but when the Antecedent is fixed
and definite, the Indicative is used; as,

Ea, quæ opus essent, parabantur,
the things [whatsoever they were], which might be necessary, were prepared.

Ea, quæ opus erant, parabantur,
those [definite] things, which were necessary, were prepared.

Obs. The Subjunctive thus used, may be placed in the Subject
of a proposition, because it is elliptical, and its own proposition
may be supplied; as, Quæ [possible erat ut] opus essent. The Indi-
cative thus used, may be placed in the Predicate, because the
Relative is then parenthetical. [See Gen. Obs.]

N.B. In all the above-mentioned instances, if the Subjunctive
be examined, the General Principle of its attachment to the
Predicate of a proposition may be traced.

The Imperative.

1. The Imperative Mood appears to be independent,
but it really depends upon jubeo, oro, or a similar word,
understood; as,

Cælestia semper spectato,
always look to heavenly things.

The Infinitive.

The Infinitive Mood is in reality a verbal substantive,
and is commonly used either as a Nominative or an
Accusative case.

Obs. The other cases of such verbal substantives are supplied
by the Gerunds and Supines; yet in imitation of the Greek the
Infinitive is sometimes used in poetry instead of them; as, *Niveus videri*, for *niveus visu*; snow-white to be seen.

1. The Infinitive is used as a Nominative [or Accusative] case, and becomes the subject of another verb; as,

_Humanum est irasci,_
to be angry is a human failing. *[Irasci, the subject of est.]*

*Obs.* Instead of the Infinitive used as the subject of a verb, the action is sometimes represented as a _consequence_, and expressed by the Subjunctive; as, _Me mea ne nimis paeniteret, tua virtute perfectum est_, that I should not be too much grieved at my own, has been caused by your virtue. This is especially the case when there is an apposition; as, _Placebat illud, ut eum adjuvares_, that was decided, namely that you should assist him.

2. The Infinitive is used as an Accusative case, and becomes the _Object_ of another verb; as,

_Illum rediisse nuntio,_
I announce him to have returned [or his having returned].
*[rediisse, the object of nuntio—the thing announced].*

*Obs. 1.* The Infinitive will sometimes depend upon a verb which cannot have the accusative of a noun; as, _Te rediisse incolere_ gaudeo, I am glad that you have returned safe.

*Obs. 2.* Some verbs from their meaning may be represented either as immediately affecting an object, or as leading to an ulterior consequence; thus they may have the Infinitive, or _ut_ with a subjunctive, depending on them; as, _In carcerem condi imperavit_, he ordered him to be thrown into prison; _Lictori, ut sibi appareret imperavit_, he gave orders to the lictor that he should appear before him.

Clauses expressed in English by the _Infinitive_ or by _that_.

*Obs. 1.* When a dependent clause denotes a purpose or a consequence, it is expressed by _ut_ with the subjunctive; as, _Veni ut viderem_, I came to see.

*Obs. 2.* When the dependent clause denotes the _end_ to which an agent is tending, it is expressed by _ad_, with a gerund or gerundial adjective; as, _Ad se perdendum ruit_, he rushes to destroy himself.

*Obs. 3.* When the dependent clause denotes a _cause_, it is expressed by _quod_, with an indicative; as, _Sed tamen hoc me ipse consolabar, quod non dubitabam_, but however I consoled myself with this, that I did not doubt.
TENSES.

Obs. 4. With verbs of feeling, as gaudeo, laudo, &c., the object of
the verb may be regarded as the cause of the feeling; and there-
fore such verbs take either an infinitive mood, or quod; as, Te
rediisse incoluarem gaudeo; or, Quod tu redisti incoluis gaudeo.

When such verbs are transitive, quod takes the Subjunctive,—
when neuter, the Indicative mood.

3. The subject of an Infinitive, when expressed, is
put in the Accusative case; as,

_Illum rediisse,_
that he has returned.

Obs. 1. After volo, nolo, cupio, timeo, possum, nequeo, videor, and a
few other similar verbs, the subject of the infinitive is not ex-
pressed when it is the same as the subject of the preceding verb;
as, _Volo dicere_, I wish to speak; i.e. _me dicere_, for me to speak.

Obs. 2. When the subject of the infinitive is the same as the
object of the preceding verb, it sometimes takes the case which
the verb governs instead of the accusative; as, _Natura beatis—
omnibus esse dedit_, nature has granted to all to be happy.

4. The Infinitive is sometimes used alone in vivid
descriptions, because then the action of the verb is
alone attended to, and time and person are disre-
garded; as,

_Diversi regem quærere, scrutari omnia, clausa perfringere_,
they sought the king in different directions—searched all places—broke
through those that were closed.

5. The Infinitive is used alone in exclamations; as,

_Mene incepto desistere victam!_

to think that I, being overcome, should desist from my attempt!

THE TENSES.

1. The Tenses may be divided into two classes; the
Principal, and the Historic.

2. The Principal tenses are the Present, Perfect,
Future, and Future-perfect.

3. The Historic tenses are the Imperfect, Perfect-
Aorist, and Pluperfect.

4. Tenses belonging to the same class are called
similar.
5. Similar tenses are generally made to depend upon each other; as,

\begin{align*}
\text{Gaudeo quod rediisti,} & \quad \text{Gaudebam quod redieras,} \\
\text{I am glad that you have returned.} & \quad \text{I was glad that you had returned.}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{Veni ut videam,} & \quad \text{Veni utviderem,} \\
\text{I come to see.} & \quad \text{I came to see.}
\end{align*}

The dependent verb then refers to the time expressed by the independent one.

\textit{Obs.} When the dependent clause is of such a nature that it refers to a different time from that of the principal verb, dissimilar tenses may be connected together; as, \textit{Iis facilius persuasit, quod undique loci naturae Helvetii continentur,} he persuaded them the more easily, because the Helvetii are [now as well as formerly] confined on every side by the nature of the place.

\textit{Remarks on Particular Tenses.}

1. The Present is sometimes used in speaking of a \textit{past} time. It is then called the \textit{Historic} Present; and has the construction of an Historic tense: as,

\begin{align*}
\text{Persuadet Castico ut regnum occuparet,} \\
\text{he persuades Casticus to seize the kingdom.}
\end{align*}

2. The Present and Imperfect are used with adverbs denoting a finished action, and then have the force of a Perfect and Pluperfect; as,

\begin{align*}
\text{Jam dudum ausculto,} & \quad \text{Jam dudum auscultabam,} \\
\text{I have been long listening.} & \quad \text{I had been long listening.}
\end{align*}

3. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative are sometimes used with a conditional clause instead of the Subjunctive, to mark the consequence more strongly; as,

\begin{align*}
\text{Si non alium jacaret odorem, laurus erat,} \\
\text{if it did not throw out a different odour it were a laurel.}
\end{align*}

4. The use of the Futures is more accurate in Latin than in English; they are required whenever an action really belongs to future time, though it may be expressed in English by the Present or Perfert; as,

\begin{align*}
\text{Dicam si potero,} & \quad \text{Si dixerat faciam,} \\
\text{I will tell if I can.} & \quad \text{if I say (or have said it) I will do it.}
\end{align*}

When the sentence becomes \textit{oblique}, the Future becomes a Present or Imperfect, and the Future-perfect a Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive; as,

\begin{align*}
\text{Dicit se dicturum si possit, --- dicturum si posset,} \\
\text{he says that he will tell if \textit{he} can, --- would tell if \textit{he} could.}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{Dicit se facturum si dixerit, --- facturum si dissiset,} \\
\text{he says that \textit{he} will do it if \textit{he} says it, --- would do it if \textit{he} said it.}
\end{align*}
GERUNDS.

5. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive in conditional and optative expressions, imply that a thing is **doubtful** merely; but the Imperfect and Pluperfect imply that it **does not exist**; as,

*Utinam salus sis,*

*I wish you may be well.*

*Utinam salus esses,*

*I wish you were well [which you are not.]*

6. The Imperfect Subjunctive is commonly used as an Aorist, instead of the Perfect; as,

*Tam vehementer percussit, ut caput ejus perfringeret,*

*he struck so violently that he broke his head.*

Yet the Perfect-Aorist may also be used in the same sense.

7. When a future intention or consequence is to be expressed in the Subjunctive, the Future Participle, with a tense of *sum,* must be used; as,

*Non dubito quin rediturus sit,*

*I do not doubt but that he will return.*

In the Passive Voice *futurum* with *ut* must be used; as,

*Non dubito quin futurum sit ut laudetur,*

*I do not doubt but that he will be praised.*

8. The tenses in the Infinitive Mood do not describe **time,** and may therefore depend upon any of the tenses, according as an action is to be represented either as going on, finished, or intended; as,

*Dico illum venire—venisse—venturum esse,*

*I say that he is coming—has con.e—will come.*

*Dixi illum venire—venisse—venturum esse,*

*I said that he was coming—had come—would come.*

9. The Future Infinitive Passive is formed by the Supine and *iri;* and the accusative which seems to be its subject is in reality governed by the Supine; as,

*Eos amatum iri,*

*that they will be loved; i.e. that a motion is made to love them.*

Instead of this Infinitive *fore ut* is sometimes used; as,

*Spero fore ut laudetur,*

*I hope he will be praised.*

**GERUNDS.**

1. The Gerunds are verbal substantives—having the **cases** of nouns, and expressing the **action** of verbs.

2. Gerunds govern the cases of their verbs; as,

*Efferror studio patres vestros videndi,*

*I am transported with the desire of seeing your fathers.*
OBS. Instead of an accusative, a genitive case is sometimes joined with the gerund in di, and appears to be put in apposition with it; as, Facultas agrorum condonandi, the power of giving up the lands.

3. The Gerund in di is in the Genitive case, and depends on words which require a genitive; as, Studio videndi, Bellum gerendi peritus, with a desire of seeing, skilled in carrying on war.

4. The Gerund in dum is in the Accusative case, and is generally governed by a preposition; as, Locus ad agendum amplissimus, a place most ample for pleading in.

5. The Gerund in do is in the Ablative case, and depends on words which require an ablative; as, Scribens ratio conjuncta cum loquendo est, the method of writing is joined with speaking.

OBS. The Gerund in do appears sometimes to have a passive signification; as, Alitur vitium, vitiumque tegendo, the disease is nourished, and lives by being concealed; but tegendo means, “by the concealing of it.”

6. Instead of the Gerunds of transitive verbs a gerundial adjective may be used, which agrees with the substantive that would be governed by the gerund; as, In consulibus creandis, for in consules creando, in creating consuls.

Ad accusandos homines, for ad homines accusandum, for accusing men.

SUPINES.

1. The Supines are verbal substantives of the Accusative and Ablative cases; as, Amatum, amatu.

2. The Supine in um governs the cases of its verb; as, Scitatum oracula Phæbi—mittimus, we send to inquire of the oracles of Apollo.
PARTICIPLES.

3. The Supine in *um* depends upon verbs of motion; as,

\[ \text{Spectatum veniunt}, \]
they come to the seeing, i.e. to see.

Probably *ad* may be supplied.

4. The Supine in *a* depends on some substantives and adjectives as an Ablative case; but is no more passive than the Supine in *um*; as,

\[ \text{Quod factum fecerat est}, \]
what is base in the doing—[or, to be done.]

PARTICIPLES.

1. Participles govern the cases of their verbs; as,

\[ \text{Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas}, \]
stretching both his hands to the stars.

**Obs. 1.** A Participle often introduces an explanatory or restrictive clause; and may be rendered by *as*, *when*, *although*, *since*, &c.; as, *Curio ad focum sedenti aurem attulerunt*, they brought gold to Curius, as he sat by the hearth; *Coactus venit*, he came since he was compelled.

**Obs. 2.** Participles do not in themselves denote *time*, but may be joined with Present, Past, or Future tenses, and take the time of the verb with which they are connected.

Active Participles.

1. The Present Participle denotes the continuance of an action; as,

\[ \text{Æolus sedet—sedebat—sedebat—sceptrum tenens}, \]
\[ \text{Æolus sit—was sitting—will sit—holding the sceptre.} \]

**Obs.** A cause is not expressed by the Present Participle in the nominative case as it is in English, but a verb with a conjunction must be used; as, Seeing him so often as I do, I know his character, *cum ilium tam axepe videam, mortem ejus noce*.

2. Deponent verbs have a Perfect Participle, which denotes that an action has been completed; as,

\[ \text{Caesar perspeculatus locorum situs proficiscitur}, \]
Caesar, having examined the situations of the places, sets out.

**Obs.** As active verbs have no Perfect Participle, its place must be supplied either by a conjunction with a Perfect or Pluperfect tense of the verb, or by the Passive Participle expressed as the
ablative absolute; as, Caesar cum iter exploravisset—or itinere explorato—ibat, Caesar, having explored the road, was proceeding.

3. The Future Participle often expresses a purpose or consequence, as well as futurity; as,

*illum visurus venio,*
I come to see him.

**Passive Participles.**

*Obs.* As Latin verbs have no Present Participle in the Passive voice, its place is supplied by a conjunction with the Present or Imperfect tense of the verb; as, *Cum ab illo amor, illum ipse diligo,* being loved by him, I esteem him myself.

1. The Perfect Participle denotes that an action has been completed; as,

*Affero res multum et diu cogitatas,*
I bring forward subjects which have been much and long thought of.

*Obs. 1.* The Perfect Participle often supplies the place of a verbal substantive; as, *Hae literae recitato magnum lactum fecerunt,* the recitation of this letter caused great grief. *So Post urbe conditam,* since the building of the city.

*Obs. 2.* *Nisi* with a Perfect Participle is used to qualify a negative expression, where in English *without* is employed; as, *Nunquam nisi coactus venit,* he never comes without having been compelled.

So with the Ablative absolute, or a Deponent, for the Active voice; as, *Caesar nunquam nisi explorato itinere—or perspiculatus iter—exercitum duxit,* Caesar never led on his army without having explored the way.

*Obs. 3.* The Perfect Participle is often used alone, for the Perfect or Pluperfect tense—*sum or eram,* &c. being omitted.

*Obs. 4.* The Perfect Participle of some verbs is used with *habeo,* I have, almost as if it was merely an auxiliary verb; as, *Hoc cognitum habeo,* I have discovered this.

2. The Future Participle does not express mere futurity, but duty, obligation, or necessity; as,

*Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est,*
Chremes remains who must be prevailed on by me.

*Obs. 1.* Neuter verbs use the Future Participle *impersonally* to denote necessity; as, *Vigilandum est ei qui cupit sincere,* he must watch who wishes to conquer.
Obs. 2. The Future Participle sometimes governs the case of the active verb, as if it were a gerund; as, *Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum*, since eternal punishment must be feared in death. This is in imitation of the Greek.

VII. PARTICLES.

ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs are used to qualify verbs or adjectives; as,


*Diu dormit,*

he sleeps long.

*Splendidè mendax,*

nobly false.

2. The rules for the construction of adverbs have been given under the cases.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Conjunctions unite words and sentences.

2. Propositions united by copulative, disjunctive, or adversative conjunctions are placed on exactly the same footing; and one is as independent as the other.

3. Other conjunctions generally make the proposition to which they are joined dependent.

Remarks on Particular Conjunctions.

1. *Ac* and *atque* are used for “as” or “than” after adjectives and adverbs denoting similarity and dissimilarity; as, *Totidem rediit navibus atque erat profectus*, he returned with as many ships as he had set out with. *Non aliter sentio ac scribo*, I do not think otherwise than I write.

2. *At* differs from *sed*, in that it expresses an objection, and not merely opposition; as, *At est vir bonus*; yet (notwithstanding what you say) he is a good man.

3. *Nec*, *neque*, is equivalent to *et non*; and a negative is generally combined this way with a conjunction in preference to being placed in any other part of the sentence; thus, *nec quisquam*, rather than *et nemo*. *Nec* is even used when the *et* refers to one word and the *non* to another; as, *Nec turpi ignoscenectæ*, and spare his not inglorious old age.

P 2
4. *Nisi* is equivalent to *si non*; only *nisi* implies that every case but the one mentioned is excluded, which *si non* does not; thus, *Nisi feceris peribis*, you will perish, unless you have done it, (but if you have, you will be safe);—but, *Si non feceris peribis*, you will perish if you have not done it, (just as much as if you have). *Nisi si* implies more doubt, and means "unless perhaps."

5. *Quippe* is often joined with relatives, and the sentence made elliptical; as, *Quippe qui diceret*, since he said, *i.e.* inasmuch as [he was a person] who said.

6. *Quum* and *quando*, when, may both be used in direct questions; but only *quando* in indirect ones; as, *Nescio quando te sim aspecturus*, I know not when I shall behold you.

7. *Seu,—sive*, (repeated) denote that either supposition amounts to the same thing, but that it is doubted which is right; hence they cannot be joined with *nouns*, except when different appellatives of the same subject are introduced; as, *Ille sive improbus, seu miser vocandus est*, whether he is to be called wicked or miserable.

8. In stating a doubt or double question the first clause is introduced by *utrum*, or *ne* inclitic, or without any conjunction. The second clause is joined to the former by *an*, (never *aut*). *Ne* is also used with the second clause when no conjunction has preceded. Hence there are four ways of expressing such propositions:

1. *Non refert utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum,*
   it matters not whether it be a gold cup or a glass.

2. *Nihil refert fecerisne, an persuaeseris,*
   it matters not whether you did it, or persuaded it.

3. *Recte, an secus fecerim, nescio,*
   I know not whether I have done right or otherwise.

4. *Verum, falsumne sit, quaeris,*
   you inquire whether it be true or false.

The difference between *seu—sive*, and *utrum—an*, is that *utrum* generally is found in indirect questions, and *sive* is not. Yet this distinction is not always observed; as, *Ego utrum nave ferar magnâ an parâ, ferar unus et idem*, whether I shall be carried in a large or a small ship, I shall be one and the same person; where *seu—sive* might have been used.

*An* is often used with a single question; as, *An censetis?* do you think! yet it always implies a doubt, or a reference to two things—do you think or do you not?

When a single question is *indirect*, *num* should be used in preference to *an*; as, *Vise num redierit*, go and see whether he has returned.
PREPOSITIONS.

Haud scio an, or nescio an, imply belief rather than disbelief, and may usually be rendered "I think," or, "I am inclined to think"; as, Haud scio an omnium praestantissimis sil, I think he is the most illustrious of all.

9. Vero, autem, but; enim, for; quidem, indeed; quoque, also; must not be placed at the beginning of a sentence, but generally after the first word. Ne quidem, not even, are always separated by the word to which they refer; as, ne unus quidem, not even one.

PREPOSITIONS.

I. Prepositions governing an ACCUSATIVE.

1. **Ad.** [motion to a place—and thence nearness.]
   1. To; via ad Capuam duebat.
   2. To (said of time); Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragicas fecit.
   3. To (in comparison with); vir bonus, sed nihil ad Persium.
   4. To (said of number); fuimus ad ducentos.
   5. Towards; simulacrum Jovis ad Orientem vertunt.
   6. Towards (said of time); ad lucem dormire cæpi.
   7. At (or near); Caesar erat ad portas.
   8. At (or on occasion of); ad conspectum filii gaudio examinata est.
   9. For (for the purpose of); mundi partes non ad usum meliores esse possunt.
   10. According to; Cyrus a Xenophonte non ad Historiae fidem scriptus est.

2. **Adversus.** [direction to something opposite.]

   1. Against (with motion towards); impetum adversus colles in cohortes fusiunt.
   2. Against (of unfavourable dispositions); non contendam adversus te.
   3. Towards (of favourable dispositions); adhibenda est reverentia quædam adversus homines.

3. **Ante.** [precedence, or priority.] opposed to post.

   1. Before (of place); ante prætorium stetit.
   2. Before (in time); ante urbem conditam.
   3. Before (in rank or degree); ante alios pulcherrimus.

4. **Apud.** [with.] used especially with persons.

   1. With (at the house of); hodie apud me sis volo.
2. With (in the estimation of); gratiam aedectus est apud bonos.
3. In (in the writings of); Cyrus apud Xenophonem dicit.
4. Before (in the presence of); loqui apud populum.
5. Cis, sitra. [on this side.]
   On this side; cis Taurum Montem. sitra Rubiconem castra locat.
6. Circa. [about.]
   1. About (of place); circa domos ire.
   2. About (of number); circa quingentos equites capti.
   3. About (of time); circa lucem surgunt nubes.
7. Circiter. [about—said of time.]
   About; circiter meridiem advenit.
8. Circum. [around.]
   Around; terque novas circum felix eat hostia fruges.
9. Contra. [opposition.]
   1. Against; contra leges facere.
   2. Opposite; contra Galliæ oram Britannia est.
10. Erga. [towards—said of the disposition.]
    Towards; amor erga te meus.
11. Extra. [without.] opposed to intra.
    1. Out of (of place); extra urbem habitant.
    2. Beyond (of a limit); extra modum superbiunt.
12. Infra. [below.] opposed to supra.
    1. Below (of place); infra oppidum castra locat.
    2. Below (of rank); res humanas infra se positas arbitratur.
13. Inter. [in the midst of several things.]
    1. Between; inter Sequanium et Helvetios mons est.
    2. Among; constat inter doctos.
    3. In the midst of (or during); inter tumultum; inter ludendum.
    1. Within (of place); compulsus intra mania.
    2. Within (of a limit); intra legem epulare.
15. Juxta. [joined to, or near.]
    Near, beside; juxta aliquem sedere.
16. Ob. [before, or placed in opposition to.]
1. Opposite (or before); *ob oculos versatur.*
2. On account of; *ob eam rem illos timeo.*

17. *Penes.* [in the power of.]
   In the power of; *penes regem omnis potestas.*

18. *Per.* [through.]
   1. Through (of place); *per totam Italian vagatur.*
   2. Through (of time) during; *ludi per decem dies facti sunt.*
   3. Through (by means of); *statuerunt per vos injurias ulcisci.*
   4. By (in adjurations); *te per Superos oro.*

19. *Pone.* [behind.]
   Behind (of place or person); *pone aedem Castoris stabamus.*

20. *Post.* [posteriority.] opposed to *ante.*
   1. After, or since (of time); *sexennio post Veios captos.*
   2. Behind; *post fanum putre Vacuæ.*

   1. Beside (passing by); *præter castra copias transduxit.*
   2. Besides; *præter hæc, nihil habeo.*
   3. Beyond (of a limit); *præter modum justus est.*

22. *Prope.* [near.]
   Near; *prope urbem tumulus est.*

   1. Near; *propter aquam crescent arbores.*
   2. On account of; *amicitia propter se expetenda est.*

24. *Secundum.* [following the course of.]
   1. Along; *secundum flumen ambulant.*
   2. After, next to; *secundum Deos homines hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt.*
   3. In favour of; *sententiam secundum Plotium dixit.*

25. *Suber.* [beneath.]
   Under; *ilia subter vulnus habet.*

Sometimes in poetry *suber* takes an Ablative; as,
   *Suber littore.*

   1. Above (of place); *supra caput asstitit.*
   2. Above (of rank or degree); *supra virs urgentus.*
27. *Trans.* [across.]

1. Across; *trans mare currunt.*
2. On the other side; *trans Rhenum incolum.*


Towards; *Egyptum versus navigat.*

29. *Ultra.* [further on.]

1. Beyond (of place); *ultra montes consederunt.*
2. Beyond (of degree); *ultra vires premuntur.*

II. Prepositions governing an ABLATIVE.

1. *A, ab, abs.* [motion from.]

1. From (of places, persons, and things); *abs te literas accepi.*
   *ab urbe venit. a fontibus undæ.*
2. By (denoting an agent); *amatur ab omnibus.*
3. On the side of; *pugnabit ab Sabiniis.*
4. In point of; *Antonius ab equitatu firmus erat.*

*Obs.*—*Servus a pedibus,* a footman. *A fronte,* a *tergo,* before, behind, &c.

2. *Absque.* [without—in the absence of.] found chiefly in the comic writers.

Without; *Absque me fuisset,* without (or but for) me it would have been.

3. *Coram.* [in the presence of.]

Before; *coram populo loquitur.*

4. *Clam.* [secretly.]

Without the knowledge of; *clam patre abiit.*

*Clam* is sometimes found with an Accusative.

5. *Cum.* [union or co-existence; never the instrument.]

With, together with; *cum patre meo vixi.*

6. *De.* [down from—or down upon.]

1. From (down from); *de saxo deicere.*
2. From (with persons); *de parente meo audiœri.*
3. Of, or from (with partitive words); *nemo de eis. partem solido demere de die.*
4. At or just after; de medià nocte profectus est.
5. Concerning, or about; Ciceronis de Republicâ liber.

7. E, ex. [removal from the midst of several things.]
   1. Out of; e manibus emittère.
   2. From; ex majore parte unaquaque res appellatur.
   3. Of (with partitive words); alter e vobis.
   4. By means of, or according to; ex legibis republicâ administra-tur.

Obs.—Laborare ex pedibus, to be diseased in the feet; e regione, opposite; ex improviso, of a sudden; ex tempore, off-hand.

8. Prae. [before—in front of.]
   1. Before (of place), in front of; præ se mittit.
   2. Before (in degree); præ cæteris floret.
   3. In comparison with; omnes præ illo parvi sunt.
   4. Owing to; præ jaculorum multitudine solem non videbitis.

9. Pro. [before.]
   1. Before (of place); pro mænibus pugnant.
   2. For (instead of); Cererem pro frugibus dicere solent.
   3. Agreeably to, according to; bellum pro dignitate populi Romani geritur.

10. Sine. [without—deprivation.]

Without; nec tecum possum vivere, nec sine te.

III. Prepositions governing an ACCUSATIVE andABLATIVE.

1. In. [in or on.]

   With an Accusative, motion is implied.
   1. Into; eo in urbebem.
   2. Towards (of persons or things); tendimus in Latium.
   3. To, or on; incumbit in literas, he applies to, or is bent on, learning.
   4. To, or for (of time); in omne futurum tempus.
   5. Against; in alterum paratus est dicere.

   With an Ablative, rest is implied.
   1. In (actually contained in); in manu meli est.
   2. In the case of; in me, in my case.
   3. Among; in hominibus nulla gens est quæ Deum esse nesciat.
   4. Upon; jacet in terrâ.

2. Sub. [under.]

   With an Accusative, motion is implied.
1. Under; *ire sub umbras.*
2. Under (meaning subjection); *cadere sub populi Romani imperium.*

N.B. *Sub* sometimes means 'up from beneath;' as, *pyram sub auras erige,* raise up a pile into the air; so also *subjicio,* I cast up, &c.

With an Ablative, *rest* is implied.

1. Under; *sub terrā habitare.*
2. Under (meaning subjection); *labores sub Rege Eurystheo pertulit.*
3. Near, or close to; *sub castris se collocant.*

Obs.—*Sub idem tempus,* about the same time; *sub ipsā profic-tione,* at the very departure.

2. *Super.* [over or upon.]

With an Accusative.

1. Above, or over; *alii super aliorum capita ruebunt.*
2. Beyond; *super et Garamantas et Indos proferet imperium.*
3. In addition to; *te, super omnia dona, unum oro.*

With an Ablative.

1. Upon; (principally in poetry); *super arbores sidunt.*
2. About, or concerning; *multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore multa.*

*Tenus* [as far as.] governs a Genitive or Ablative, and follows its case.

Up to, or as far as; *crurum tenus. Corecyrae tenus. pectoribus tenus.*

A Preposition is sometimes omitted before its case; as,

*Habeo te loco parentis, i. e. in loco.*
I have you in the place of a parent.

**INTERJECTIONS.**

1. Interjections have no grammatical connexion with any words in a sentence.

2. The cases which follow Interjections depend upon some other word, which is generally omitted for the sake of brevity: thus,—
(a) The Nominative or Accusative denotes the object spoken of; as,

Oh! festus dies! Heu! stirpem invisam!
Oh! the joyful day. Alas! the hated race!

(b) The Dative denotes the person who receives misfortune; as,

Vae! misero mihi! quantá de spe decidi.
Alas! wretched me!—from how great a hope have I fallen.

(c) The Vocative denotes that a person is addressed; as,

O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.
O beautiful boy! trust not too much to your beauty.

Obs. Næ is joined only with pronouns; as, Næ! illi vehementer errant, Indeed they are greatly mistaken.
PROSODY.

1. Prosody teaches the laws and construction of Verse.
2. The construction of Latin verse depends upon the quantity of syllables.
3. Quantity is either long or short.
4. A long syllable is marked thus, ('); as, cōntrā.
5. A short syllable is marked thus, ('); as, dōminūs.
6. A long syllable is considered in verse as equal in length of time or pronunciation to two short syllables.
7. Every verse is divisible into feet.
8. A foot is a union of two, three, or four syllables.
9. The most common feet are the following:

Dissyllables. 1. Spondeo, — — : as, virūtus.
2. Iambus, o — : as, hōnōs.
3. Trochee, — o : as, tēndē.

Trisyllables. 4. Dactyl, o o o : as, scribērē.
5. Anapaest, o o — : as, dōminō.
6. Tribrach, o o o : as, rēgērē.

Quadrissyll. 7. Choriambus, o o o : as, scribē tūōs.
8. Ionic a minore, o o o : as, müsērārūm.

SCANNING.

1. Scanning a verse is dividing it into its several feet; as,
   Armā vi[rūmqui cānō Trōjā qui | prīmūs āb |ōrūs.
2. The last syllable of a verse is regarded as common; i.e. as either long or short, whichever may be required.
3. A vowel at the end of a word is cut off in scanning, if the following word begins with a vowel; as, 
\[ Sērā nī|mīs vēl' ēst \ | crūstīnā \ | vīv' hōdī|ē. \]
for vita, vive.

4. M, and its vowel, are also cut off before a vowel in the following word; as, 
\[ Mōnstr' hōr|rēnd' īn|fōrm' īn|gēns cui| lāmēn ā|dēmptūm. \]
for monstrum, horrendum, informe.

5. H is considered as no letter in scanning.

Obs. 1. The elision (or cutting off) of a vowel is sometimes neglected where there is a pause in the sense; as, 
\[ Pōsthūbītā cōlū|issē Sū|mō : hīc \ | īlliūs \ | ārma. \]

Obs. 2. Sometimes, in imitation of the Greeks, elision is neglected without any pause, and a long vowel is used either as short or long before another, instead of being cut off; as, 
\[ Tēr sūnt \ | cōnā|īt īm|pōnērē \ | Pēlīō \ | Ossam. \]

Obs. 3. The early Roman poets cut off s before a consonant; as, 
\[ Dēlphī>nūs jācēt \ | haǔd nīni|ō lus|tūtū'-s nī|tōre. \]

Obs. 4. The Ictus, or Aesis, is a stress, or elevation of voice, with which one syllable in every foot is necessarily pronounced in scanning. The Thesis is a lowered tone, or want of emphasis, which falls on all the syllables which have not the Ictus.

**Metre.**

1. Metre, or measure, is the arrangement of a verse according to its respective feet.

2. The metre of any verse takes its name from the principal feet which it contains.

3. The principal metres used by the Latin poets are Dactylic, Trochaic, Iambic, Choriambic, and Ionic.

4. Each pair of feet in Trochaic and Iambic lines, and each foot in every other kind of verse, is also called a meter.

**I. Dactylic Metre.**

1. The **Dactylic Hexameter** contains six feet, of which the fifth must be a Dactyl, and the sixth a
Spondee; the others may be either Dactyls or Spondees indifferently; as,

\[ \text{Armā vērūmquē cā|nō Trō|jā} \text{ quī} | \text{primūs āb} | \text{ōrūs.} \]

Sometimes, though rarely, a Spondee is found in the fifth place; as,

\[ \text{Cara De}|\text{śūm sobo|les mag|num Jovis} | \text{incrē|mēntūm.} \]

Obs. When a poem consists of Dactylic Hexameters, it is called Heroic verse.

2. The Dactylic Pentameter contains five feet, and is divided into two halves, called Penthemimers.

(a) The first Penthemimer contains two Dactyls or Spondees, and a long syllable. The second contains always two Dactyls, and a long syllable; as,

\[ \text{Sic nūl|lūm vōbīs} || \text{tēmpūs ālībit inērs.} \]

(b) The Hexameter followed by the Pentameter forms the Elegiac verse, commonly called Long and Short; as,

\[ \text{Ventūræ memores jām nunc estote senectē,} \]
\[ \text{Sic nullum vobis tempus albit iners.} \]

(c) The first Penthemimer should always end with a word.

3. The Dactylic Tetrameter contains four feet, of which the third is a Dactyl and the fourth a Spondee; the first two may be either one or the other; as,

\[ \text{Aūt Ephē|sūm bēmārīsovē Cō|rīnthē.} \]

4. The Dactylic Dimeter contains two feet, the first a Dactyl and the second a Spondee; as,

\[ \text{Tērrāt} | \text{ūrbēm.} \]

Obs. 1.—In Dactylic metre, the ictus always falls on the first syllable of each foot.

Obs. 2.—The Dactylic cæsura is when the last syllable of a word becomes the first of a foot; as,

\[ \text{Pinguis et ingra|tās prēmē|re|tur cæsus urbi.} \]

Obs. 3.—Sometimes, though rarely, a short syllable in the cæsura is made long by the ictus falling on it; as,

\[ \text{Pectori|būs inē|ans.} \]
II. TROCHAIC METRE.

1. The Trochaic Tetrameter would contain eight feet, but half the last foot is almost always omitted.

*Obs.*—A verse which omits half the last foot is called *Catalectic*.

(a) The Pure Trochaic Tetrameter admits of no other variety than a Spondee, instead of a Trochee, in the even places, i.e. the second, fourth, and sixth foot; as,

\[ \overline{Vér nōvūm vērj'am cā'nōrūm} \ | \ vērē \ | \ nātūs \ | \ ōrbēs \ | \ ēst. \]

(b) The fourth foot of the Tetrameter should always end with a word.

*Obs.*—The comic writers scarcely ever used the Tetrameter *pure*; but admitted a Tribrach, Spondee, Dactyl, or Anapæst in every place except the seventh; as,

\[ Quānd'o \ hinc \ | \ ābērīt \ | \ ōdōs'a \ ēst \ hēc \ | \ ātūs \ | \ ūdūlēs\cēntūlīs. \]

They also neglected the division of the line at the end of the fourth foot.

III. IAMBIQUE METRE.

1. The Iambic Trimeter contains six feet or three meters; as,

\[ Sūs | ēt i̯p̯sā Rō|mā vēribūs | rūit. \]

2. The Iambic Dimeter contains four feet, or two meters; as,

\[ Inārsīt \ ās|tūō|sūs. \]

(a) Iambic lines are either pure or mixed.

(b) The *Pure* Iambic verse contains only Iambic feet.

(c) The *Mixed* Iambic verse admits in the odd places, i.e. the first, third, and fifth foot, a Tribrach, Spondee, Dactyl, or Anapæst, and in the even places sometimes a Tribrach; as,

\[ Íd sībī | nēgōtī crē|dīdīt | sōlūm | dārī. \]

*Obs.* 1.—The comic poets used an Iambic Tetrameter, containing eight feet, or four meters; as,

\[ Ínfēnsūs in|stāt nē|quām fācī|ām nūp|tūs | sāllā|cām. \]
OBS. 2.—The comic poets admitted a Tribrach, Spondee, Dactyl, or Anapaest, in any part of an Iambic verse except the last foot, which is always an Iambus.

IV. CHORIAMBIGIC METRE.

Choriambic lines are almost always mixed, the Choriambi being joined with other feet.

1. A Choriambic Tetrameter contains three Choriambi, preceded by a Spondee, and followed by an Iambus; as,
   Tū nē | quaērērēs | scīrē nēsās | quēm mīhi quēm | tībī.

2. A Choriambic Trimeter contains two Choriambi, preceded by a Spondee, and followed by an Iambus; as,
   Mācē|nās ātāvīs | ēditē rēgībūs.

3. A Choriambic Dimeter contains one Choriambus, preceded by a Spondee, and followed by an Iambus; as,
   Mīlēs | tē dūcē gēs|sērit.

Obs.—The Choriambic Dimeter is sometimes Catalectic; as,
   Grātō | Pŷrrhā sūb ān|trō.

V. IONIC METRE.

1. The Ionic Tetrameter contains four Ionic feet; as,
   Misērār'um ēst | nēquē ēmōri | dārē lūdūm | nēquē dūloī.

LYRIC METRES.

A great variety is produced in the Lyric metres by uniting different feet in the same line, or combining different lines in stanzas.

I. The Sapphic stanza consists of four lines, of which the first three are alike. They may be con-
sidered as a variety either of Trochaic or of Choriambic metre; as,

\[ \text{Intè}^\text{gér} \text{ vit}^\text{ī} \text{ scélērisque} \text{ pūrūs.} \]

Or, \[ \text{Intè}^\text{gér} \text{ vit}^\text{ī} \text{ scélērisque pūrūs.} \]

The last line contains a Dactyl and Spondee: as,

\[ \text{Fūscē phūrētrā.} \]

II. The Alcaic stanza consists of four lines.

1. The first two lines are alike, and contain an Iambus or Spondee in the first place, then an Iambus, a long syllable, and two Dactyls.

2. The third line is a mixed Iambic Dimeter, with a long syllable, having a Spondee in the first and third place.

3. The fourth line contains two Dactyls, followed by two Trochees.

\[ \text{Vīdēs} \text{ ub}^\text{ēl} \text{tē stēt nūvē} \text{ cāndidūm.} \]

\[ \text{Sōrāc}^\text{tē} \text{nēc}^\text{i} \text{jām}^\text{i} \text{sūstīnē}^\text{i} \text{lānt}^\text{i} \text{oñūs.} \]

\[ \text{Sīlo}^\text{ārē}^\text{lēbō}^\text{rāntēs}^\text{gēlū}^\text{qūs}^\text{s.} \]

\[ \text{Flūmīnā}^\text{i} \text{cōnstitē}^\text{i} \text{rīnt}^\text{i} \text{ālcūtō.} \]

Almost all the other Lyric metres consist of varieties of Choriambic lines, arranged singly, in pairs, or in stanzas. Varieties of Dactylic metre are also sometimes used.

**QUANTITY.**

1. Every syllable in pronunciation must be either long or short.

2. Syllables which are sometimes pronounced long, and sometimes short, are called common.

3. The rules for the quantity of syllables may be arranged under five heads:—Nature, Position, Derivation, Termination, and Authority.

**I. Nature.**

1. All diphthongs are long; as, \[ \text{āurum, nēuter, mēnāē.} \]
2. Contracted syllables are long; as, mensa-e, mensā; fluctu-is, fluctūs; dele-e, delē.

Exceptions.

1. Diphthongs are sometimes short when followed by a vowel; as, prōvestus.

2. Contracted syllables, followed by a final t, are short, except in the earliest poets; as, ama-īt, (originally amāt) amāt.

3. The penultima of some supines is short, although the crude form of the verb ends in a vowel; as, dātum, rātum, sātum, ītum, lītum, quītum, rūtum.

II. Position.

1. A vowel before two consonants, or a double one in the same word, is long by position; as, vēntus, nēx, (nēcis.)

2. If a word ends with a consonant, and the following word begins with a consonant, the former syllable will be long; as,

Mājor | sūm quām | cūi pōsīt für|tūnā nō|cēre.

The syllables jor, sum, quam, and sit, are long by position.

3. If a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel is sometimes made long; as,

Ferte, cītī flam|mās, date |telā, |scandite |muros.

4. A short vowel followed by a mute and liquid becomes common; as, pāter, patris; volūcer, volucris.

5. A vowel before another in the same word is short by position; as, mēus, ĭūus.

Exceptions.

(a.) Genitives in ius have the i common; as, unĭus, ĭlĭus; but in alterĭus, it is always short, in alĭus always long.
(b.) In the genitive and dative of the E—declension ε between two ι's is long; as, διεί: otherwise it is short; as, ρεί, ψιεί.

Obs. Old poets made the ε in ρεί and ψιεί long.

(c.) I in iō is long, except when r follows; as, fiunt, fieri.

(d.) The first syllable in Divus and eheu! is long.

(e.) The first syllable in ohe! and Diana is common.

(f.) The a is long in the uncontracted form of the Gen. and Dat. of the first declension; as, mensāi, pictāi.

(g.) Greek words retain the quantity which they had in Greek; as, Piērides, elegia.

III. Derivation.

1. Derivatives generally retain the quantity of the word from which they are derived; as, lēgo, lēgebam, lēgam; lēgi, lēgeram, lēgero.

Exceptions.

Some words derived from the same root exhibit a difference in their quantity; as, fides, infidus, perfidus; mācero, mācer; mōlestus, mōles, &c.

2. Compound words retain the quantity of the simple word; as, sōlor, consōlor; pōtens, impōtens.

Exceptions.

Dejēro, pejēro, from jūro; innūba, pronūba, from nūbo; and some others.

IV. Terminations.

1. All monosyllables ending in a vowel are long, except the inclitic words, quē, nē, vē, cē, tē, which are short.

2. Monosyllable nouns are long, except fēl, mēl, vēr, ōs (ossis), vās (vadis), ës, and quis, which are short.
1. **Vowel Terminations.**

1. Nouns ending in *a*, when not contracted, are short; as, *mensā*, *bonā*.
   (a.) Other words in *a* are long; as, *contrā*, *ergā*; except *putā*, *itā*, *quiā*, *posteā*, *cjā*.
   (b.) Numerals in *a* are generally, but not always, long: as, *trigintā*.

2. Words ending in *e*, when not contracted, are short; as, *marē*, *legē*, *scribē*.
   (a.) Adverbs in *e*, when derived from feminine adjectives in *a*, are long, except *benē* and *malē*.
   (b.) Greek words ending in *e* are long; as, *Anchisē*, *Lethē*.

3. Words ending in *i* are long; as, *amāri*.
   (a.) *Mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, *ibi*, are common; *nisi* and *quaśi* are short.
   (b.) Greek datives and vocatives in *i* are short; as, *Pallādi*, *Alexi*.

4. Words ending in *o* are common, but generally long; as, *dicō*, *virgō*.
   (a.) *O* in nouns, when contracted, is always long; as, *dominō*, *servō*.
   (b.) Adverbs formed from ablative cases are long; except *sedulo*, *mutuo*, *crebro*, which are common.
   (c.) *Modō* and *quomodō* are always short.
   (d.) *Cito*, *ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, and *homo*, are almost always short.

5. Words ending in *u* are always long; as, *manu*, *genu*, *amatū*, *diū*.

2. **Consonant Terminations.**

1. Words ending in *b*, *d*, and *t*, are short: as, *āb*, *ēd*, *capūt*.

2. Words ending in *c* are long: as, *āc*, *sīc*, and *hīc* (the adverb).
   (a.) *Nēc* and *donēc* are short.
   (b.) *Fac*, *hic* (this,) and *hoc* in the Nom. case, are common.

3. Words ending in *l*, *n*, and *r*, are short; as, *animāl*, *ān*, *Cāsār*.
   (a.) Hebrew words in *l* are long; as, *Michaēl*, *Gabriēl*. 
(b.) Greek words in ν, from nominatives in ας, are long; as, Ἀεικάν.

(c.) The monosyllables νῦν, κῦν, σῦν, are long.

(d.) Greek nouns which have a long vowel before ν or ῥ are long; as, Πεῖν, Ηυμῖν, αῖρ, κρατέρ; but Ηεκτόρ, Νέστόρ, πατέρ, and ματέρ, are short.

4. Words ending in ας, are long; as, majestās, regās.

(a.) Nouns, which are short in the penultima of the genitive, have ἀς short in the nominative; as, Παλλᾶς, Παλλάδις; anās, anātīs.

(b.) Accusative plurals in ας, from Greek nouns, are short; as, ἡρως, ἡρωᾶς, Φυλλίς, Φυλλίδᾶς.

5. Words ending in ος are long; as, sedēs, audēs, patrēs.

(a.) Nouns, which are short in the penultima of the genitive, have ὦς short in the nominative: as, μῖλος, σεγῆς, δίως; but abīēs, ariēs, pariēs, and Cerēs, are long.

(b.) Penēs, in the power of, and ὦς from sum, are short.

(c.) Neuter nouns, and nominative plurals from the Greek, are short; as, Ηιππομαντῆς, Κυκλῶπης, Ναυάδῆς.

6. Words ending in ἢς, when not contracted, are short; as, Παρῆς, πανῆς, τρίς.

(a.) Nouns which are long in the penultima of the genitive, have ἢς long in the nominative; as, Σαμνῆς, Σαμνῦς.

7. Words ending in ος are long; as, ἡνῶς, νεπῶς.

(a.) Compōs and inpōs are short.

(b.) Words which have short φ in Greek, are short; as, Delōs, chaōs, Palladōs.

8. Words ending in us, when not contracted, are short; as, famulūs, regiūs, tempūs, amāmūs.

(a.) Nouns which are long in the penultima of the genitive, have ὦς long in the nominative; as, salūs, salūtis; tellūs, tellūris.

(b.) All words spelt with a diphthong in Greek are long; as, Panthūs, Sapphūs, Jesus.

9. Words ending in ὀς are short, except those which have ὀν in the accusative; as, Trachyς, Trachyν.

V. Authority.

1. The quantity of all syllables which do not come under the preceding rules, is said to be determined by authority.
2. By authority is meant that a syllable has been used by some Roman poet as long, short, or common. The quantity of such syllables must therefore be learnt by reading and memory.

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

Deviations from the usual forms in Etymology, Syntax, or Prosody, are called Figures: to which different names have been given by grammarians.

IN ETYMOLOGY.

1. Apoecope.—When a letter is cut off from the end of a word; as,
   "Men' for mene; satin' for satisne.
2. Paragoge.—When a letter is added to the end of a word; as,
   Med for me; in old writers.
   Obs. Any addition to the end of a word, though quite usual, is sometimes called a paragoge; as, hio, hicnine.
3. Syncope.—The shortening of a word by omitting letters; as,
   Aspris, deum, dixit, for asperis, deorum, dixisti.
4. Epenthesis.—The lengthening of a word by inserting a letter; as,
   Repperit, relligio, for reperit, religio.
   Obs. The lengthening of such words may generally be accounted for by their derivation; as, repperit for red-perit.
5. Aphaeresis.—When a letter or syllable is cut off from the beginning of a word; as,
   'St, conia, for est, ciconia.
6. Archaismus.—When an old form of words is used; as,
   Aulai, omnis, anus, for aula, omnes, ands.
7. Hellenismus.—When a Greek form is imitated; as,
   Pallados, for Palladis.
In Syntax.

1. *Ellipsis.*—When words are omitted, which are required to complete the grammatical construction; as,
   *Egomet continuo mecum—dixi* omitted.

2. *Pleonasmus.*—When there is a redundancy of words in a sentence; as,
   *Sic ore locutus. Deceptum morte fefellit.*

3. *Hendiadys.*—When one thing is expressed as two; as,
   *Pateris libamus et auro, i.e. aureis pateris.*

4. *Periphrasis.*—When many words are used to express one thing; a description instead of a name; as,
   *Teneri fatis ovium, for agni.*

5. *Anacolouthon.*—When the following and preceding clauses of a sentence do not agree together; as,
   *Nam nos omnes, quibus est aliquis objectus labor, omne quod est interea tempus lucro est.*

6. *Archaismus.*—When an old form of construction is used; as,
   *Operam utitur, for operd.*

7. *Hellenismus.*—When a Greek construction is imitated; as,
   *Sensit mediis delapsus Achivis, for se delapsum esse.*

8. *Hysteron Proteron.*—When that is put last which is the first in sense; as,
   *Moriamur, et in media arma ruamus.*

9. *Hypallage.*—When cases are mutually interchanged; as,
   *Dare classibus austros, for classes austris.*

10. *Tmesis.*—When a compound word is divided by the intervention of another; as,
    *Per mihi gratum feceris, for pergratam.*

11. *Parenthesis.*—When a sentence is interrupted by inserting another clause in the middle of it; as,
    *Titre dum redeo (brevis est via) pasce capellas.*

12. *Metaphora,* or *Metaphor.*—When a word is transferred from its natural meaning to another which is analogous to it; as,
    *Roma, orbis terrarum caput.*

13. *Hyperbole.*—An exaggerated expression; as,
    *Rorantia vidimus astra. Pleno se proluit auro.*

14. *Aposiopesis.*—An abrupt breaking off of a sentence; as,
    *Quos ego—sed motos præstat componere fluctus.*

15. *Prosopopeia,* or *Personification.*—When an inanimate object is represented as an animate one; as,
    *Ipsa suas mirantur Gargara messes.*
1. Synalæpha.—When a vowel is cut off before another word; as, *Sera nimir vir-a est.*

2. Ethlipsis.—When *m* and its vowel are cut off before another word; as, *Monstr'um horrendum.*

*Obs.* Synalæpha and Ethlipsis are not variations from the usual forms, except when they take place at the end of a line; as,

--- *Ignari hominumque locorumq'ue*
--- *Erramus.*
--- *Turres ac tecta Latinor'-um.*
--- *Ardua cernebant.*

3. Systole.—When a long syllable is shortened; as, *Tul'run'um,* for *tu'lerun'um.*

4. Diastole.—When a short syllable is lengthened; as, *Priamides.*

5. Synæresis.—When two vowels are pronounced as one; as, *Dis,* *alvearia,* *ingent*.

6. Diæresis.—When one syllable is pronounced as two; as, *Evolvisses,* *silua,* for *evolvisse,* *silua.*

**THE END.**
By the same Author.


